I hereby give notice that an ordinary meeting of the Whau Local Board will be held on:

**Date:** Wednesday, 28 August 2019  
**Time:** 6.00pm  
**Meeting Room:** Whau Local Board Office  
**Venue:** 31 Totara Avenue  
New Lynn

---

**Whau Local Board**  
**OPEN AGENDA**

---

**MEMBERSHIP**

Chairperson  
Tracy Mulholland

Deputy Chairperson  
Susan Zhu

Members  
Derek Battersby, QSM, JP  
Catherine Farmer  
Te’eva Matafai  
David Whitley

(Quorum 4 members)

---

Glenn Boyd  
( Relationship Manager)  
Local Board Services (West)

Riya Seth  
Democracy Advisor - Whau

22 August 2019

Contact Telephone: 09 826 5193  
Email riya.seth@aucklandcouncil.govt.nz  
Website: www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz

---

**Note:** The reports contained within this agenda are for consideration and should not be construed as Council policy unless and until adopted. Should Members require further information relating to any reports, please contact the relevant manager, Chairperson or Deputy Chairperson.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITEM</th>
<th>TABLE OF CONTENTS</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Welcome</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Apologies</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Declaration of Interest</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Confirmation of Minutes</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Leave of Absence</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Acknowledgements</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Petitions</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Deputations</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Public Forum</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Extraordinary Business</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Auckland Transport Update Report for the Whau Local Board August 2019</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Whau Local Grants Round One 2019/2020 grant allocations</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Avondale Multipurpose Community Facility and Public Realm Design Brief</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Play Provision Assessment Whau</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Development plan for parks and open space in New Windsor area</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Grant of a new community lease to Avondale Community Action, 33-37 Eastdale Road, Avondale</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Approval for a new road name at 59-69 Maple Street &amp; 68 Avondale Road, Avondale</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Approval for a new road name at 5, 7 and 7B Mayville Avenue, New Lynn</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Auckland Film Protocol consultation feedback and recommended changes</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Informal local board workshop views on the draft findings of the Animal Management Bylaw 2015 review</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Local board annual report 2018/2019</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Auckland Council's Year End and Quarterly Performance Report: Whau Local Board for quarter four 2018/2019</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>ATEED six-monthly report to the Whau Local Board</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Governance Forward Work Calendar – August 2019</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Confirmation of workshop records - July 2019</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Consideration of Extraordinary Items</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PUBLIC EXCLUDED**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITEM</th>
<th>TABLE OF CONTENTS</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Procedural Motion to Exclude the Public</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Local board annual report 2018/2019</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A. Draft 2018/2019 Whau Local Board Annual Report</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1 **Welcome**

2 **Apologies**

   At the close of the agenda no apologies had been received.

3 **Declaration of Interest**

   Members are reminded of the need to be vigilant to stand aside from decision making when a conflict arises between their role as a member and any private or other external interest they might have.

   Specifically members are asked to identify any new interests they have not previously disclosed, an interest that might be considered as a conflict of interest with a matter on the agenda.

   The following are declared interests of the Whau Local Board:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Board Member</th>
<th>Organisation / Position</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tracy Mulholland</td>
<td>• New Lynn Business Association – Business Associate/Contractor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Susan Zhu</td>
<td>• Chinese Oral History Foundation – Committee member</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The Chinese Garden Steering Committee of Auckland – Board Member</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Derek Battersby</td>
<td>• New Lynn Tennis Club – Patron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• West Lynn Gardens – Patron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Tag Out Trust – Deputy Chairman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• New Lynn Bowling Club - Patron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• New Lynn RSA - Member</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catherine Farmer</td>
<td>• Avondale-Waterview Historical Society – Member</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Blockhouse Bay Historical Society – Member</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Portage Licensing Trust – Trustee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Blockhouse Bay Bowls – Patron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Forest and Bird organisation – Member</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Grey Power - Member</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Te’eva Matafai</td>
<td>• Pacific Events and Entertainment Trust - Co-Founder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Miss Samoa NZ - Director</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Malu Measina Samoan Dance Group - Director/Founder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Pasifika Festival Village Coordinators Trust ATEED - Chairperson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Aspire Events – Director</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>David Whitley</td>
<td>• Rosebank Business Association - Member</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• REINZ - Member</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Chamber of Trade - Mentor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Lopdell House - Trustee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Amalgamated Hardware Merchants (AHM) Apprenticeship Trust – Trustee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Rotary New Lynn – Head director of Public Relations New Lynn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4 **Confirmation of Minutes**

That the Whau Local Board:

a) confirm the ordinary minutes of its meeting, held on Wednesday, 24 July 2019, as a true and correct record.

5 **Leave of Absence**

At the close of the agenda no requests for leave of absence had been received.

6 **Acknowledgements**

At the close of the agenda no requests for acknowledgements had been received.

7 **Petitions**

At the close of the agenda no requests to present petitions had been received.

8 **Deputations**

Standing Order 7.7 provides for deputations. Those applying for deputations are required to give seven working days notice of subject matter and applications are approved by the Chairperson of the Whau Local Board. This means that details relating to deputations can be included in the published agenda. Total speaking time per deputation is ten minutes or as resolved by the meeting.

At the close of the agenda no requests for deputations had been received.

9 **Public Forum**

A period of time (approximately 30 minutes) is set aside for members of the public to address the meeting on matters within its delegated authority. A maximum of 3 minutes per item is allowed, following which there may be questions from members.

At the close of the agenda no requests for public forum had been received.

10 **Extraordinary Business**

Section 46A(7) of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 (as amended) states:

"An item that is not on the agenda for a meeting may be dealt with at that meeting if-

(a) The local authority by resolution so decides; and

(b) The presiding member explains at the meeting, at a time when it is open to the public,-

   (i) The reason why the item is not on the agenda; and

   (ii) The reason why the discussion of the item cannot be delayed until a subsequent meeting."

Section 46A(7A) of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 (as amended) states:
"Where an item is not on the agenda for a meeting,-

(a) That item may be discussed at that meeting if-

(i) That item is a minor matter relating to the general business of the local authority; and

(ii) the presiding member explains at the beginning of the meeting, at a time when it is open to the public, that the item will be discussed at the meeting; but

(b) no resolution, decision or recommendation may be made in respect of that item except to refer that item to a subsequent meeting of the local authority for further discussion."
Auckland Transport Update Report for the Whau Local Board August 2019

File No.: CP2019/13582

Te take mō te pūrongo
Purpose of the report

1. To respond to requests on transport-related matters, provide an update on the current status of the Local Board Transport Capital Fund (LBTCF), provide a summary of consultation material sent to the board and provide transport related information on matters of specific application and interest to the Whau Local Board and its community.

Whakarāpopototanga matua
Executive summary

2. In particular, this report:
   - Provides updates on the Local Board Transport Fund projects in the Whau Local Board Area.
   - Notes consultation information sent to the Board for feedback and, details decisions of the Traffic Control Committee as they affect the Board area.

Ngā tūtohunga
Recommendation

That the Whau Local Board:

a) receive Auckland Transport’s update for August 2019.

Horopaki
Context

3. This report updates the board on Auckland Transport (AT) projects and operations in the local board area, it updates the board on their advocacy and consultations, and includes information on the status of the Local Board Transport Capital Fund.

4. Auckland Transport is responsible for all of Auckland’s transport services, excluding state highways. We report on a monthly basis to local boards, as set out in our Local Board Engagement Plan. This monthly reporting commitment acknowledges the important engagement role local boards play within the governance of Auckland on behalf of their local communities.

Tātaritanga me ngā tohutohu
Analysis and advice

5. The Local Board Transport Capital Fund (LBTCF) is a capital budget provided to all local boards by Auckland Council and delivered by Auckland Transport. Local boards can use this fund to deliver transport infrastructure projects that they believe are important but are not part of Auckland Transport’s work programme. Projects must also:
   - be safe
   - not impede network efficiency
• be in the road corridor (although projects running through parks can be considered if there is a transport outcome).

6. The Whau Local Board has allocated all their funding available.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Whau Local Board Transport Capital Fund Financial Summary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total Funds Available in current political term</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Amount committed to date on projects approved for design and/or construction</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Remaining Budget left</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Avondale Streetscape Project Update

7. An external project manager has recently been engaged to manage this project on behalf of Auckland Transport

8. The current phase of work involves project familiarisation, meeting with the various project partners and developing a Project Plan (including timeframes) for discussion with the Local Board in late August or the beginning of September, in a workshop.

Ngā whakaaweawe me ngā tirohanga a te rōpū Kaunihera Council group impacts and views

9. The impact of information (or decisions) in this report are confined to AT and do not impact on other parts of the council group.

Ngā whakaaweawe ā-rohe me ngā tirohanga a te poari ā-rohe Local impacts and local board views

Cars In Cliff View Drive – Parking Issues

10. Auckland Transport (AT) realise that vehicles for sale can be a nuisance, particularly if there are a number of such vehicles parked at a location. However, AT considers that these do not cause an issue for other road users if parked in a legal and safe manner.

11. Please be advised that there is no law that states a person cannot advertise a car is for sale. A registered car with a current warrant of fitness or registration which is parked in an unrestricted area is parked legally, even if a ‘for sale’ sign is displayed. If any cars are not registered and do not have a current warrants of fitness, AT will be able to issue penalty notices.

12. Unfortunately AT is unable to take any action in relation to these cars.

Consultation documents on proposed improvements

13. Consultation documents for the following proposals have been provided to the Whau Local Board for its feedback and are summarised here for information purposes only.

14. Following consultation, Auckland Transport considers the feedback received and determines whether to proceed further with the proposal as consulted on or amend the proposal if changes are considered necessary:

• Proposal to improve access in Golf Road, Titirangi

15. The Whau Local Board were in support of the above consultation.
Auckland Transport’s Traffic Control Committee (TCC) report

16. Decisions of the TCC during the month of June and July 2019 affecting the Whau Local Board area are listed below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Street (Suburb)</th>
<th>Type of Report</th>
<th>Nature of Restriction</th>
<th>Decision</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1-June-19</td>
<td>Blockhouse Bay Road / Rosebank Road / New North Road / Phyllis Street / Springleigh Avenue / Soljak Place / Bollard Avenue / Trent Street / Laurel Street, Avondale</td>
<td>Permanent Traffic and Parking changes Combined</td>
<td>Lane Arrow Markings, Shared Path, No Stopping At All Times, Traffic Island, Road Hump, Pedestrian Crossing, Footpath, Traffic Signal, Give-Way control, Flush Median</td>
<td>CARRIED To note also in the Mt Albert area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-July-19</td>
<td>Bolton Street, Blockhouse Bay</td>
<td>Permanent Traffic and Parking changes Combined</td>
<td>Permanent Traffic and Parking changes Combined</td>
<td>CARRIED</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

New Lynn to Avondale Shared Use Path Timeline Update

17. Tendering and Award milestones
   - 05 April 2019: Tender released for construction of all stages
   - 15 May April 2019: Tender close
   - June 2019: Tender awarded

18. Consents milestones
   - 15 March 2019 lodged Resource Consents for Stage 3;
   - 05 May 2019: Planned lodgment of Resource Consents for Stage 1
   - TBC: Planned lodgment Resource Consents for Stages 2a and 2b;

Wolverton Street Culvert Project Update

19. The Wolverton Street culvert project is now expected to begin in 4-6 weeks. The project team is reviewing construction methodologies to ensure the least impact on the road network.

20. The current construction plan is: (However, this could change):
    Culvert 1- September 2019- March 2021
    - The new culvert is a top down bridge construction consisting of bored piles and concrete slab. This will be constructed in stages, with a partial closure of the road. Works will be completed over a 12 month period, at which point the road will be back in operation, before moving to complete the stream works.
    Culvert 2- July 2019- September 2020
    - A new triple barrel 3m diameter pipe culvert is to be constructed off line to the existing culvert. A tunnel boring machine will be used to bore and thrust the new pipe culverts beneath the road over a 12 month period, before moving to complete the stream works.
21. Traffic management plan:
   • The road will be widened at Culvert 1 to accommodate a 3 lane temporary tidal flow traffic setup
   • Tidal flow arrangement - starts mid-August 2019 for 12 months
   • The tidal flow system will see two lanes used for peak traffic flows and a single in the opposite direction. The tidal flow refers to the AM and PM changeover to always have 2 lanes of traffic flowing in the peak direction.

22. More information about the project and how the tidal flow traffic setup will work will be provided before the commencement of work.

Free Child Weekend Fares

23. Auckland Transport will be offering free AT HOP fares for children on buses, trains and participating ferries on weekends and public holidays from early September.

24. This replaces the current 99c child weekend fares and is being extended to include most ferry services. With a registered AT HOP card, children aged 5 to 15 years (inclusive) will be able to travel on free by bus*, train and ferry* on weekends and public holidays. * Excludes SkyBus, Mahu City Express and Waiheke ferry services.

25. This offer applies to travel with a registered AT HOP card registered with a child profile. If paying by cash, normal child fares will apply (60% of single adult fare). If a child already has a registered AT HOP card with a child concession loaded, the free child weekend fares will automatically apply when tagging on and off. Otherwise, parents will need to purchase, in advance, an AT HOP card for each child (aged 5 – 15) and register the card to the child. Children under 5 can travel free when accompanied by a fare paying passenger. No ticket or AT HOP card is required for under 5-year old.

Key information

26. The offer is only available for:
   • children aged 5 to 15 (inclusive)
   • travel on weekends and public holidays
   • on all Auckland Transport buses, train and participating ferries except Skybus, Mahu City Express and Waiheke ferry with an AT HOP card registered in the name of the travelling child
   • If customers don’t currently have an AT HOP card, they will need to purchase one and register it online
   • Child concessions are typically activated (by tagging on) within 24 hours but can take up to 72 hours.
   • Families will need to prepare in advance of their weekend trip – it is not possible to purchase an AT HOP card with an active child concession on the day they travel.

Ferry services

27. The free child weekend fares will apply to scheduled public transport ferry services on weekends and public holidays
   • between Downtown and Bayswater, Beach Haven, Birkenhead, Devonport, Half Moon Bay, and Hobsonville Point.
   • Travel to Waiheke is not included
   • Stanley Bay, Pine Harbour, Gulf Harbour and West Harbour do not operate on weekends.
   • Rakino services are not HOP enabled.

28. The free child weekend fares will start Saturday 7 September. It will be publicly announced week commencing 19 August
Walking, Cycling and Safety Project Update

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Project Name</th>
<th>Department</th>
<th>Project Description/Activity</th>
<th>Project Start</th>
<th>Project Finish</th>
<th>Project Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Road Safety Campaigns, Education</td>
<td>Community and Road Safety Programme</td>
<td>Delivered an alcohol CBT in partnership with the NZ Police</td>
<td>Apr-19</td>
<td>Jun-19</td>
<td>Completed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and Events</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Road Safety Campaigns, Education</td>
<td>Community and Road Safety Programme</td>
<td>Delivered 3 learner license courses</td>
<td>Jul-19</td>
<td>Sep-19</td>
<td>On-going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and Events</td>
<td></td>
<td>Delivered 2 restricted courses</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Delivered a young drivers enforcement checkpoint with Police</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Delivered 2 child restraint checkpoints</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Delivered a regional red-light running campaign</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tauākī whakaaweawe Māori

Māori impact statement

29. The proposed decision of receiving the report has no impacts or opportunities for Māori. Any engagement with Māori, or consideration of impacts and opportunities, will be carried out on an individual project basis.

Ngā ritenga ā-pūtea

Financial implications

30. The impact of information in this report is confined to Auckland Transport and does not impact on other parts of the Council group. Any engagement with other parts of the Council group will be carried out on an individual project basis.

Ngā raru tūpono me ngā whakamaurutanga

Risks and mitigations

31. The proposed decision of receiving the report has no financial implications.

Ngā koringa ā-muri

Next steps

32. The forward works programme in the Whau Local Board area could change from the advice provided here if circumstances change.

33. Auckland Transport has risk management strategies in place for the transport projects undertaken in the local board area.

Ngā tāpirihanga

Attachments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>AT School Community Transport - Whau Local Board report</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Ngā kaihaina
### Signatories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Owena Schuster – Elected Member Relationship Manager (West)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authorisers</td>
<td>Jonathan Anyon – Elected Member Relationship Team Manger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Glenn Boyd - Relationship Manager Henderson-Massey, Waitakere Ranges, Whau</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Author**: Owena Schuster – Elected Member Relationship Manager (West)
- **Authorisers**: Jonathan Anyon – Elected Member Relationship Team Manager, Glenn Boyd - Relationship Manager Henderson-Massey, Waitakere Ranges, Whau
### Whau Local Board Report – AT School Community Transport

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item 11</th>
<th>Travelwise status</th>
<th>Total WSB routes</th>
<th>WSB event/ route audit</th>
<th>Active mode promotion events (e.g. cycle follow up, WOW event, park and ride, walking promotion)</th>
<th>Speed event (e.g. SDAS, back to school)</th>
<th>Young drivers event (e.g. driver licencin g training)</th>
<th>Safety at the school gate</th>
<th>Other safety promotion event (e.g. kea crossing, crossing training, roads and roadides, ball talks)</th>
<th>PT promotion event (e.g. railsafe week)</th>
<th>Meetings / workshops (e.g. lead teacher, students, WSB volunteer)</th>
<th>Engineering info</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arahoe School</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td>Work to be completed at school gate as the ground beside the footpath has subsided.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avondale College</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avondale Intermediate</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avondale Primary</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AT and developers are working on the Crayford St upgrade. This will include designs for a raised zebra crossing outside the school</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Attachment A

### Item 11

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>#</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Blockhouse Bay Intermediate</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blockhouse Bay School</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chaucer School</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>P, C</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fruitvale Road School</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>Plans to raise the school crossing have been delayed due to a change in design and potential location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glenavon School</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>P</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green Bay High School</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td></td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green Bay Primary School</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>P</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kelston Girls’ College</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

entry, plaza and kerb build out lengthening.
### Attachment A

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item 11</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kelston Intermediate</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kelston Primary School</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Lynn School</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Windsor School</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rosebank School</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St Leonards Road School</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St Mary's School (Avondale)</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

School had raised concerns with fading footpath markings and requested to install yellow tactile ground markers on Rosebank Road. Further investigation to be undertaken by AT engineers in regards to signs and road markings.
Whau Local Grants Round One 2019/2020 grant allocations

File No.: CP2019/11893

Te take mō te pūrongo
Purpose of the report

1. To fund, part-fund or decline applications received for Whau Local Grants Round One 2019/2020 including multi-board applications.

Whakarāpopototanga matua
Executive summary

2. This report presents applications received for Whau Local Grants Round One 2019/2020 (refer Attachment B) including multi-board applications (Attachment C).


4. The local board has set a total community grants budget of $130,503 for the 2019/2020 financial year.

5. Nineteen applications were received for Whau Local Grants, Round One 2019/2020, requesting a total of $86,139.63 and twenty-one multi-board applications were received, requesting a total of $78,993.07.

Ngā tūtohunga
Recommendations

That the Whau Local Board:

a) agree to fund, part-fund or decline each application in Whau Local Grants Round One 2019/2020 listed in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application ID</th>
<th>Organisation</th>
<th>Main focus</th>
<th>Requesting funding for</th>
<th>Amount requested</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LG2021-103</td>
<td>Auckland Happy House Incorporated</td>
<td>Arts and culture</td>
<td>Towards traditional Chinese dance classes including venue hire, purchase of costumes and sound system between 1 September 2019 to 28 February 2020.</td>
<td>$3,000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LG2021-134</td>
<td>Connected Media Charitable Trust</td>
<td>Arts and culture</td>
<td>Towards the preparation and delivery of “The Outlook for Someday – The Someday Challenge and Awards 2019” between 01/06/2019 and 20/12/2019.</td>
<td>$5,000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Grant Code</td>
<td>Recipient</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
<td>Amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>LG2021-104</td>
<td>Charlotte Museum Trust</td>
<td>Towards rental costs for Charlotte Museum from 22/09/2019 to 23/02/2020.</td>
<td>$5,000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>LG2021-105</td>
<td>St. Dominic's Parish</td>
<td>Towards a contribution for costs for the 360 Christmas food hampers.</td>
<td>$5,000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>LG2021-106</td>
<td>Chinese Association of West Auckland</td>
<td>Towards venue hire at New Lynn Community Centre between October and December 2019.</td>
<td>$4,060.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>LG2021-108</td>
<td>The TYLA Trust</td>
<td>Towards the entry fees for the &quot;TYLA&quot; school holiday programme from 1 October 2019 to 31 January 2020.</td>
<td>$3,325.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>LG2021-114</td>
<td>Kelston Community Hub incorporated</td>
<td>Towards resources for starter packs for children starting Early Childhood Education including a contribution to subsidised car seats, strollers, Auckland Transport cards, food, and marketing from 02/09/2019 to 30/01/2020.</td>
<td>$4,200.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>LG2021-118</td>
<td>Auckland Regional Migrant Services Charitable Trust</td>
<td>Towards the cost of rent, English language tutor fees, volunteer travel reimbursement and transport for participants to attend the Safari Playgroup between 2 September 2019 and 30 June 2020.</td>
<td>$5,000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>LG2021-120</td>
<td>New Lynn Sea Scout Group</td>
<td>Towards purchase of new chairs and tables for the Kelston Scout Hall.</td>
<td>$5,000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grant No.</td>
<td>Organisation Name</td>
<td>Category</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LG2021-123</td>
<td>Bridge of Love Association Incorporated</td>
<td>Community</td>
<td>Towards the sound system, costume, venue hire, Christmas decorations, materials, and advertisement costs to celebrate a Christmas event on 3 December 2019.</td>
<td>$1,519.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LG2021-129</td>
<td>Youthline Auckland Charitable Trust</td>
<td>Community</td>
<td>Towards the purchase of new laptops for two youth workers at Youthline services.</td>
<td>$2,485.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LG2021-132</td>
<td>Action Education Incorporated</td>
<td>Community</td>
<td>Towards the facilitator fees to deliver 25 “Spoken Word Poetry” workshops at schools in the Whau area between 1/9/2019 and 30/9/2020.</td>
<td>$5,000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LG2021-133</td>
<td>Blockhouse Bay District Senior Citizens Association Incorporated</td>
<td>Community</td>
<td>Towards the purchase and installation of two security cameras at the Blockhouse Bay Senior Citizens Hall.</td>
<td>$500.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LG2021-125</td>
<td>Church of the Saviour Trust</td>
<td>Events</td>
<td>Towards costs for stage, sound and lighting, security, Saint Johns services, transport, signage, advertising, entertainment, band, generators, volunteer expenses and supplies, disc jockey fees, prizes and traffic management for Christmas at the Beach 2019.</td>
<td>$10,000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LG2021-127</td>
<td>Interacting trading as Interacting Theatre Trust</td>
<td>Events</td>
<td>Towards &quot;InterACT 2019&quot; including costs of the event setup, facilitator's fee, waste management, communication device hire and food.</td>
<td>$3,026.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LG2021-119</td>
<td>St Jude's Church Avondale Anglican Parish</td>
<td>Historic Heritage</td>
<td>Towards building consent application and preliminary design and documentation for conservation work.</td>
<td>$5,000.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Whau Local Board Grants Round One 2019/2020

**Item 12**

#### New Lynn Tennis Sports and Social Club Incorporated

**Organisation**
New Lynn Tennis Sports and Social Club Incorporated

**Main focus**
Sport and recreation

**Requesting funding for**
Towards the "Juniors Tennis Coaching Programme 2019" over seven months period in 2019 and 2020.

**Amount requested**
$4,704.00

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application ID</th>
<th>Organisation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LG2021-102</td>
<td>New Lynn Tennis Sports and Social Club Incorporated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Glenavon Early Childhood Centre

**Organisation**
Glenavon Early Childhood Centre

**Main focus**
Sport and recreation

**Requesting funding for**
Towards a preschool sports programme "Playball Experiences for Children" from 14/10/2019 to 10/04/2020.

**Amount requested**
$4,320.00

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application ID</th>
<th>Organisation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LG2021-111</td>
<td>Glenavon Early Childhood Centre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### St Dominic's Catholic Primary School

**Organisation**
St Dominic's Catholic Primary School

**Main focus**
Sport and recreation

**Requesting funding for**
Towards the costs to construct an asphalt bike track, including the purchase of bikes, helmets, and a bike shed.

**Amount requested**
$10,000.00

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application ID</th>
<th>Organisation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LG2021-115</td>
<td>St Dominic's Catholic Primary School</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Total**
$86,139.63

---

**b) agree to fund, part-fund or decline each application in Whau Multi-board Round One 2019/2020, listed in Table Two below:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application ID</th>
<th>Organisation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MB1920-153</td>
<td>The Operating Theatre Trust</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Main focus**
Arts and culture

**Requesting funding for**
Towards 2,000 free show tickets and free transport for children from low decile schools in the local board area to attend the theatre production "Greedy Cat" by Joy Cowley.

**Amount requested**
$3,103.55

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application ID</th>
<th>Organisation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MB1920-179</td>
<td>Te Pou Theatre - Ruia Taitea Creative Limited</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Main focus**
Arts and culture

**Requesting funding for**
Towards the "Kōanga Festival 2019" including event management, marketing and "Kaumatua and Whanau Day" costs.

**Amount requested**
$2,000.00

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application ID</th>
<th>Organisation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MB1920-106</td>
<td>Womens Centre Waitakere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Main focus**
Community

**Requesting funding for**
Towards operational costs at the Womens Centre Waitakere from October 2019 to September 2020.

**Amount requested**
$4,200.00

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application ID</th>
<th>Organisation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MB1920-119</td>
<td>CNSST Foundation, formerly known as Chinese New Settlers Services Trust</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Main focus**
Community

**Requesting funding for**
Towards the teacher facilitation fees and the purchase of two tablets.

**Amount requested**
$8,108.00
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item Number</th>
<th>Organization Name</th>
<th>Community</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Grant Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MB1920-126</td>
<td>Age Concern Auckland Incorporated</td>
<td>Community</td>
<td>Towards the provision of an accredited visitor service and field social support services across West and Central Auckland.</td>
<td>$10,000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MB1920-127</td>
<td>Rutherford College Community Education</td>
<td>Community</td>
<td>Towards distribution costs of 2020 West Auckland Adult and Continuing Education booklets to over 55,000 households.</td>
<td>$1,500.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MB1920-131</td>
<td>Violence Free Communities Incorporated</td>
<td>Community</td>
<td>Towards event costs for the &quot;Toddler Day Out&quot; on 22 February 2020.</td>
<td>$5,000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MB1920-135</td>
<td>Auckland Kids Achievement Trust</td>
<td>Community</td>
<td>Towards the salary of three &quot;Stars&quot; programme coordinators.</td>
<td>$5,000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MB1920-136</td>
<td>Deaf Action New Zealand</td>
<td>Community</td>
<td>Towards venue hire, a New Zealand Sign Language interpreter fee, and purchase of technical equipment to deliver forums from October 2019 to September 2020.</td>
<td>$1,427.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MB1920-146</td>
<td>Roopa Aur Aap Charitable Trust</td>
<td>Community</td>
<td>Towards the cost of providing counselling services, victim support services, office rent and volunteer reimbursements to support victims of family violence from 2 September 2019 to 28 August 2020.</td>
<td>$4,500.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MB1920-147</td>
<td>YMCA North Incorporated</td>
<td>Community</td>
<td>Towards the costs of delivering the &quot;Family Camp&quot; at YMCA Adair which includes staff costs, accommodation, outdoor instruction, equipment and catering in November 2019 and February 2020.</td>
<td>$2,500.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Grant Code</td>
<td>Organization</td>
<td>Category</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>MB1920-152</td>
<td>Mika Haka Foundation Charitable Trust</td>
<td>Community</td>
<td>Towards the cost of running the “YES Creative Hub” from 10 October 2019 to 10 October 2020, specifically the costs of rent (studio and office), public liability insurance, utilities, safety officer’s salary and administration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>MB1920-156</td>
<td>Dance Therapy NZ</td>
<td>Community</td>
<td>Towards venue hire, marketing, facilitation, equipment, coordination and administration costs for the “Dance 4 Us West” programme from February to June 2020.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>MB1920-168</td>
<td>Thrive Teen Parent Support Trust</td>
<td>Community</td>
<td>Towards the young parents’ group activities including venue hire, food, transport, communications, volunteers and a speaker contribution from September 2019 to June 2020.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>MB1920-173</td>
<td>Body Positive - New Zealand Incorporated</td>
<td>Community</td>
<td>Towards the salary of the peer navigator position for Body Positive New Zealand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>MB1920-176</td>
<td>Garden to Table</td>
<td>Community</td>
<td>Towards the programme coordinator salary and travel costs to deliver a food education programme to schools in West Auckland.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>MB1920-103</td>
<td>The ReCreators Limited</td>
<td>Environment</td>
<td>Towards the costs for upcycling workshops and to provide educational services in the local board area.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Item 12

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grant Code</th>
<th>Organisation</th>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MB1920-170</td>
<td>Environmental Education for Resource Sustainability Trust</td>
<td>Environment</td>
<td>Towards the purchase of native plants from Te Whangai Trust and Gulf Trees and courier fees for delivering classroom bins, administration and office expenses for recycling for schools and preschools in the local board area.</td>
<td>$5,007.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MB1920-110</td>
<td>The Korean Society of Auckland Incorporated</td>
<td>Events</td>
<td>Towards the annual event costs for the Korean Day event on 14 March 2020.</td>
<td>$500.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MB1920-145</td>
<td>5Tunz Communications Ltd</td>
<td>Events</td>
<td>Towards the delivery of “Holi - Festival of Colours 2020” on 14 March 2020, including the cost of the generator, stage lighting and decorations, sound, port-a-loos, waste management, security, advertising, and marquees.</td>
<td>$2,000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MB1920-159</td>
<td>United North Piha Lifeguard Service Incorporated</td>
<td>Sport and recreation</td>
<td>Towards the costs of structural engineering, detailed design, project management and consent fees for the North Piha Lifeguard Facility Replacement Project.</td>
<td>$5,250.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Total** | **$78,993.07**

---

**Horopaki Context**

6. The local board allocates grants to groups and organisations delivering projects, activities and services that benefit Aucklanders and contribute to the vision of being a world class city.

7. The Auckland Council Community Grants Policy supports each local board to adopt a grants programme.

8. The local board grants programme sets out:
   - local board priorities
   - lower priorities for funding
   - exclusions
   - grant types, the number of grant rounds and when these will open and close
   - any additional accountability requirements.
9. The Whau Local Board adopted the Whau Local Board Community Grants Programme 2019/2020 on 27 March 2019 (Attachment A) and will operate two quick response, two multiboard and two local grant rounds for this financial year.

10. The community grant programmes have been extensively advertised through the council grants webpage, local board webpages, local board e-newsletters, Facebook pages, council publications, radio, and community networks.

Tātaritanga me ngā tohutohu

Analysis and advice

11. The aim of the local board grant programme is to deliver projects and activities which align with the outcomes identified in the local board plan. All applications have been assessed utilising the Community Grants Policy and the local board grant programme criteria. The eligibility of each application is identified in the report recommendations.

Ngā whakaaweawe me ngā tirohanga a te rōpū Kaunihera

Council group impacts and views

12. The main focus of an application is identified as arts, community, events, sport and recreation, environment or heritage. Based on the main focus of an application, a subject matter expert from the relevant department, will provide input and advice.

13. The grants programme has no identified impacts on council-controlled organisations and therefore their views are not required.

Ngā whakaaweawe ā-rohe me ngā tirohanga a te poari ā-rohe

Local impacts and local board views

14. Local boards are responsible for the decision-making and allocation of local board community grants. The Whau Local Board is required to fund, part-fund or decline these grant applications against the local board priorities identified in the local board grant programme.

15. The board is requested to note that section 48 of the Community Grants Policy states; ‘we will also provide feedback to unsuccessful grant applicants about why they have been declined, so they will know what they can do to increase their chances of success next time’.

16. A summary of each application received through Whau Local Grants, Round One 2019/2020 and multi-board applications is provided in Attachment B and Attachment C.

Tauākī whakaaweawe Māori

Māori impact statement

17. The local board grants programme aims to respond to Auckland Council’s commitment to improving Māori wellbeing by providing grants to individuals and groups who deliver positive outcomes for Māori. Auckland Council’s Māori Responsiveness Unit has provided input and support towards the development of the community grant processes.

18. Twenty-two applicants applying to local grant round one, has indicated that their project targets Māori or Māori outcomes.

Ngā ritenga ā-pūtea

Financial implications

19. The allocation of grants to community groups is within the adopted Long-term Plan 2018-2028 and local board agreements.

20. The Whau local board has set a total community grants budget of $130,503 for the 2019/2020 financial year.
21. In round one of the Whau Local Grants 2019/2020, nineteen applications were received requesting a total of $86,139.63 and twenty-one multi-board applications requesting a total of $78,993.07.

Ngā raru tūpono me ngā whakamaurutanga
Risks and mitigations
22. The allocation of grants occurs within the guidelines and criteria of the Community Grants Policy and the local board grants programme. The assessment process has identified a low risk associated with funding the applications in this round.

Ngā koringa ā-muri
Next steps
23. Following the Whau Local Board allocating funding for round one of local grants and multi-board applications, Commercial and Finance staff will notify the applicants of the local board’s decision.

Ngā tāpirihanga
Attachments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Whau Local Board Grants Programme 2019/2020</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Whau Local Grants Round One 2019/2020 applications <em>(Under Separate Cover)</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Whau Multiboard Grants Round One 2019/2020 applications <em>(Under Separate Cover)</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ngā kaihaina
Signatories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Erin Shin - Community Grants Coordinator</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authorisers</td>
<td>Marion Davies - Grants and Incentives Manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Shane King - Head of Service Support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Glenn Boyd - Relationship Manager Henderson-Massey, Waitakere Ranges, Whau</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Whau Local Board Grants Programme 2019/2020

Our Local Grants Programme aims to provide contestable and discretionary community grants to local communities.

Outcomes sought from the local grants programme

Our grants programme will be targeted towards achieving the following outcomes, as outlined in our local board plan:

- Well-planned towns, facilities and housing
- Great neighbourhoods with strong community connections, capacity and voices
- It’s 20 minutes to all we need by walking, cycling and public transport
- Enhanced natural environment
- Strong local businesses and more quality local jobs
- Celebrating our creative edge in our streets, neighbourhoods and communities
- Our heritage is known, protected and our stories are shared

Our priorities for grants

The Whau Local Board welcomes grant applications that align with one of more of the following priorities and deliver initiatives and activities to achieve the Whau Local Board plan.

Well-planned towns, facilities and housing

- Our towns and neighbourhood centres are busier, cleaner and safer
- Whau has a network of great community buildings, sports fields and parks
- More people are more active more often

Great neighbourhoods with strong community connections, capacity and voices

- Our towns and neighbourhood communities are stronger
- Māori leaders, Pasifika, Chinese, Indian and other ethnic and resettled communities contribute to the Whau’s future
- Our children and young people are supported to learn and be active
- Mana whenua and mataawaka are acknowledged and their needs and aspirations are widely known
- Celebrate our diverse communities and their heritages
- Our most in need have a place to go for help

It’s 20 minutes to all we need by walking, cycling and public transport

- Increase awareness of our local links
Enhanced natural environment

- The water quality of our rivers and streams is improving
- More of our parks, coasts and waterways are being restored
- Whau is living more sustainably
- Know, grow, protect and manage better our urban trees and green areas

Strong local businesses and more quality local jobs

- Our local businesses are stronger and more successful
- Whau is growing more new local business and quality jobs
- Our local businesses have access to more skilled local workers now and in the future

Celebrating our creative edge in our streets, neighbourhoods and communities

- Whau’s communities can access and participate in arts activity
- Whau is known for its robust and flourishing creative economy
- Art and culture is celebrated in our place-making

Our heritage is known, protected and our stories are shared

- We celebrate and support protection from a strong research foundation
- Gather and share historical knowledge
- Preservation of our places and stories

Higher Priority

- Resident-led projects that help strengthen and connect neighbourhoods

Lower Priorities

We will consider applications for other services, projects, events and activities outside the current priorities, however these will be considered a lower priority.

The Whau Local Board will consider the following activities as lower priorities:

- administration and salary costs
- events which charge an admission fee
- applicants that have already received one successful grant application within the current financial year
- where the applicant has a considerable cash surplus (relative to the amount applied for), unless they can verify that it is a tagged reserve and cannot be used as a contribution towards the submitted project
- applicants who have not considered other sources of funding for their project
Investment approach
The Whau Local Board will allocate budget annually to support the local grants programme which will be divided into three approaches:

- Quick Response Grants: for grants $500 to $2,000
- Local Grants: Generally for grants $2,000 to $5,000

Match funding
The Whau Local Board will prioritise grants with a strong “match funding” approach i.e. where groups can demonstrate significant community contribution in time, cash and/or in kind services.

Application dates
Grant rounds for 2019/2020 will be as follows:

**Quick Response**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2019/20 Grant rounds</th>
<th>Opens</th>
<th>Closes</th>
<th>Decision made</th>
<th>Projects to occur after</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Round one</td>
<td>7 October 2019</td>
<td>1 November 2019</td>
<td>11 December 2019</td>
<td>22 December 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Round two</td>
<td>23 April 2020</td>
<td>8 May 2020</td>
<td>17 June 2020</td>
<td>1 July 2020</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Local Grants**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2019/20 grant rounds</th>
<th>Opens</th>
<th>Closes</th>
<th>Decision made</th>
<th>Projects to occur after</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Round one</td>
<td>3 June 2019</td>
<td>5 July 2019</td>
<td>28 August 2019</td>
<td>1 September 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Round two</td>
<td>17 February 2020</td>
<td>27 March 2020</td>
<td>20 May 2020</td>
<td>1 June 2020</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Multi-board funding**
We will work with the neighbouring local boards to deliver multi-board funding. The applicant will need to clearly demonstrate how the proposal benefits people and communities in the Whau area.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2019/20 Multi-board grant rounds</th>
<th>Opens</th>
<th>Closes</th>
<th>Decision made</th>
<th>Projects to occur after</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Round one</td>
<td>3 June 2019</td>
<td>19 July 2019</td>
<td>28 August 2019</td>
<td>1 September 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Round two</td>
<td>20 January 2020</td>
<td>13 March 2020</td>
<td>20 May 2020</td>
<td>1 June 2020</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Accountability measures

In addition to the measures in the community grants policy the Whau Local Board requests that all successful applicants as far as possible provide photographs of the activity funded.
Purpose of the report

1. To approve the project vision and key provisions of the Avondale multipurpose community facility and public realm design brief.

Whakarāpopototanga matua

Executive summary

2. Community engagement informed the service requirements and design brief for the new Avondale multipurpose community facility and public realm. The community engagement built on what we had already heard from the community and validated three themes: community connection, creative uses and learning and development. A new theme of community services was identified through community feedback.

3. Discussion groups were held with community and internal stakeholders to test service and spatial requirements reflected in the design brief.

4. The design brief (see attachment A) covers the multipurpose community facility and public realm – the town square, Great North Road interface and new laneway. It outlines the project vision, key provisions and spaces required to meet the vision and community needs.

5. The project vision is to:
   - create a new heart for Avondale that integrates a new community facility, town square and open space which reflects Avondale’s unique identity
   - encourage and enable community ownership and activation
   - support community delivery of responsive programmes, services and activities
   - create a vibrant hub for Avondale which integrates community, library and light recreation uses in a flexible, multipurpose development
   - create a place which activates and complements the Avondale town centre
   - celebrate the significance of mana whenua, local and wider, cultural landscapes.

6. The key provisions of the project are listed below.
   - A place where people of all ages, abilities and interests can come together for meaningful social interaction and connection.
   - A place that supports learning, knowledge and culture for all.
   - A place where people have genuine opportunities to enhance their life and work skills through access to programmes and services.
   - A place where people can take part in light recreation and creative activities in a safe and healthy environment.
   - A place that can host important local and social events in Avondale’s community.

7. The spaces required to meet the vision, key provisions and community needs are categorised as public realm (particularly the town square), arrival and multipurpose community spaces.

8. Hui and consultation with mana whenua have contributed to a mana whenua vision, with the principle of hononga (connection, relationship and bond) underpinning the project.
9. The next steps for the project are sharing the design brief with the community and procurement of the design team. Concept planning will start in late 2019 once the design team is contracted.

**Ngā tūtohunga Recommendations**

That the Whau Local Board:

a) endorse the findings of the community engagement process.

b) approve the Avondale multipurpose community facility and public realm project vision:
   i) Create a new heart for Avondale that integrates a new community facility, town square and open space which reflects Avondale’s unique identity.
   ii) Encourage and enable community ownership and activation
   iii) Support community delivery of responsive programmes, services and activities.
   iv) Create a vibrant hub for Avondale which integrates community, library and light recreation uses in a flexible, multipurpose development.
   v) Create a place which activates and complements the Avondale Town Centre.
   vi) Celebrate the significance of mana whenua, local and wider, cultural landscapes.

c) approve the Avondale multipurpose community facility and public realm key provisions:
   i) A place where people of all ages, abilities and interests can come together for meaningful social interaction and connection.
   ii) A place that supports learning, knowledge and culture for all.
   iii) A place where people have genuine opportunities to enhance their life and work skills through access to programmes and services.
   iv) A place where people can take place in light recreation and creative activities in a safe and healthy environment.
   v) A place that can host important local and social events in Avondale’s community.

**Horopaki Context**

10. Whau Local Board decided to locate the new multipurpose community facility at 1951-1987 Great North Road, Avondale in a confidential session on 12 December 2018 (resolution number WH/2018/146). The decision was made public on 27 February 2019 (resolution number WH/2019/5).

11. Whau Local Board expressed a desire for a high level of community engagement on the service requirements and design brief at a workshop on 20 February 2019.

12. The project is informed by strategic documents including the Community Facilities Network Plan (2015), Central West Area Community Needs Assessment and Facilities Investigation (2016), Whau Community Facilities Indicative Business Case (2017) and Unlock Avondale High Level Project Plan (2017). It is also informed by Our Future Avondale and activities such as Stand Up Avondale.
13. The expected benefits of the new facility in the heart of Avondale Town Centre include urban renewal, improved service, enhanced community wellbeing and improved social connectedness. Funding of $21 million was allocated to the new facility in the Long-term Plan 2018 – 2028 (LTP).

14. The facility will integrate library and community centre services. The benefits of integrated facilities include:

- convenient, one stop shop for community activities
- cross promotion, and exposure to, a broad range of activities, programmes and events
- maximising use through sharing flexible and multi-purpose spaces
- better return on investment through shared infrastructure, avoiding duplication of spaces and management, staffing and maintenance.

Tātaritanga me ngā tohutohu
Analysis and advice

Community engagement process and findings

15. Two phases of community engagement informed the design brief:

- Phase one – validating and building on what we have already heard from the community, checking for gaps and prioritising
- Phase two – testing service and spatial requirements and inputting into the design brief

Phase one

16. We tested three themes identified from earlier engagement: community connection, creative uses and learning and development.

17. We engaged with the community through social media, an online survey, a display and hardcopy materials in the library, face-to-face community conversations – pop ups and events, hui with mana whenua and face-to-face meetings with community stakeholders during the period 19 March to 9 May 2019.

18. We received 159 responses to the online survey, 10 hard copy surveys, ~245 comments from face-to-face conversations and 14 stakeholder meetings which gave us more than 1860 comments, ideas and suggestions.

19. The data validated the three themes of community connection, creative uses and learning and development. We identified a new theme of community services and received feedback specific to the facility and town square.

20. The community prioritised activities under each of the themes and these were supported by free text comments and suggestions. Table one shows the top ranked items under each of the themes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 1: Themes and prioritised activities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Theme</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Community connection** | • markets, events and festivals  
• celebrating culture and diversity  
• youth activities  
• activities for older people  
• meeting space |
21. Activities and programmes for pre-school children (e.g. wriggle and rhyme and playgroups) were also highly ranked across the themes.

22. The three most frequently mentioned items relating to the design of the facility were:
   - reflecting the diversity of the community
   - local history, including market gardens/orchards, racecourse and brickworks
   - Māori heritage.

23. The most frequently mentioned items relating to the facility (not including swimming pool) were:
   - parking
   - meeting spaces
   - multipurpose spaces
   - kitchen.

Phase two

24. The purpose of the phase two engagement was to test service and spatial requirements to input into the design brief. We had hui with mana whenua and discussion groups with:
   - community (email invites to all who expressed an interest in being further involved in the project)
   - arts practitioners from the Avondale area
   - community service providers (e.g. CAB, Plunket, Feed the Streets)
   - youth through the Whau Youth Board
   - internal stakeholders, library and community centre staff.

25. The input received from the discussion groups informed the design brief.

Design brief vision, key provisions and spaces

26. The design brief (see attachment A) includes the new multipurpose community facility and public realm – an enlarged and refurbished town square, Great North Road interface and new laneway. It will be delivered in partnership with Panuku Development Auckland (Panuku) who hold the funding for the public realm works.
27. The design brief outlines the requirements for the design team to respond to as they progress the project. The project vision and key provisions are important to ensure the design meets community needs.

28. The project vision is to:
   - create a new heart for Avondale that integrates a new community facility, town square and open space which reflects Avondale’s unique identity
   - encourage and enable community ownership and activation
   - support community delivery of responsive programmes, services and activities
   - create a vibrant hub for Avondale which integrates community, library and light recreation uses in a flexible, multipurpose development
   - create a place which activates and complements the Avondale town centre
   - celebrate the significance of mana whenua, local and wider, cultural landscapes.

29. The key provisions of the project are listed below.
   - A place where people of all ages, abilities and interests can come together for meaningful social interaction and connection.
   - A place that supports learning, knowledge and culture for all.
   - A place where people have genuine opportunities to enhance their life and work skills through access to programmes and services.
   - A place where people can take part in light recreation and creative activities in a safe and healthy environment.
   - A place that can host important local and social events in Avondale’s community.

30. The design brief outlines the spaces that are required to meet the vision, key provisions and engagement themes. They are categorised as public realm (particularly the town square but also including the new laneway and Great North Road interface), arrival and multipurpose community spaces. There are also back of house spaces, for example, staff workrooms and building services.

31. Table two outlines the design brief spaces and key functions. More detail on the spaces, functions and relationships between functions is available in Attachment A.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 2: Design brief spaces and key functions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Spaces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Town square</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrival</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Item 13

- programming, small events, pōwhiri and exhibitions
- café space to eat and socialise – bring your own food or purchase from social enterprise or small food businesses
- kitchen – supports functions and activities and opportunities for learning and social enterprise

| Multipurpose community space 1 | • book collection |
|                               | • children and youth library services |
|                               | • maker space and creative uses |
|                               | • computers/ technology |
|                               | • quiet zone |
|                               | • ability to reconfigure to combine spaces for large special community events |

| Multipurpose community space 2 and 3 | • large spaces suitable for wide range of performances, meetings, light recreation, programmes, classes, rehearsals, playgroups |
|                                      | • bookable and available after hours |

| Creative space | • space appropriate for wet and dirty creative activities |
|               | • teaching art |

| Workshop room | • meetings, training and workshops |
|              | • light recreation classes |

| Clinic rooms | • private/ confidential |
|             | • suitable for multiple services – CAB, Plunket, budgeting, legal advice, counselling |
|             | • small meetings or group projects/ study |
|             | • unpack/ pack away to support multiple uses |

**Ngā whakaaweawe ā-rohe me ngā tirohanga a te poari ā-rohe**

**Local impacts and local board views**

32. Members of the community have been involved in defining service requirements and inputting into the design brief. It is expected that a new, integrated, fit-for-purpose community facility and public realm will have positive impacts on the services, programmes and activities available to the Avondale community.

33. It is important that the design of the new facility and public realm is welcoming to all. An ostentatious design may exclude those who would benefit most from the services available and this would have a negative impact.

34. A workshop was held with the Whau Local Board on 31 July 2019 covering the findings of the community engagement and the design brief. The board expressed support for the community engagement process and design brief. They emphasised the importance of community rather than commercial provision, the need to retain flexibility through design and consideration of the future and the interaction with the neighbouring Panuku owned site.
**Tauākī whakaaweawe Māori**  
**Māori impact statement**

35. It is anticipated that the project will meet Māori outcomes through the services provided, design and contribution to sense of place and identity.

36. Several hui and a site visit have been held with mana whenua to input on the project. The mana whenua vision for the project is included in the design brief (see Attachment A). This includes the underlying principle of hononga – connection, relationship and bond. Hononga underpins the project in its entirety, from how we work together, the services and design of the facility through to how the facility is operated when it opens.

37. The vision also outlines the desire for the project to:
   - remember and celebrate the local and wider cultural landscape
   - express cultural identity and sense of place
   - provide for cultural welcoming processes and protocol.

38. There is a shared commitment with mana whenua for ongoing involvement as the project progresses.

**Ngā ritenga ā-pūtea**  
**Financial implications**

39. Funding of $21 million for the multipurpose community facility is included in the LTP. The funding was allocated to deliver benefits including urban renewal, improved service, enhanced community wellbeing and improved social connectedness.

40. The Finance and Performance Committee resolved at its November 2017 committee meeting (resolution number FIN/2017/168) to sell the current library and community centre site at 93-99 Rosebank Road. Sale proceeds will be ring-fenced and made available to implement this project, including the purchase of the shops at 1971-1987 Great North Road, Avondale.

41. Panuku hold the funding for the public realm works.

**Ngā raru tūpono me ngā whakamaurutanga**  
**Risks and mitigations**

42. Table three outlines the high-level risks, impacts and mitigations for the project.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk</th>
<th>Impact</th>
<th>Mitigation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Negative community perception of design process</td>
<td>Community opposition</td>
<td>Communication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Delays to delivery</td>
<td>Sharing design brief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>More resource required</td>
<td>Engagement on concept plans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Design trade-offs must be made to meet budget</td>
<td>Community needs or expectations are not met</td>
<td>Transparency regarding design trade-offs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Communication and engagement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limited integration of facility design with public realm design and wider area</td>
<td>Key outcomes not met</td>
<td>Shared design brief, project governance and planning with Panuku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insufficient funding to upgrade Avondale Central</td>
<td>Lost opportunity</td>
<td>Continue working with Whau Local Board, Panuku and</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
43. There are still uncertainties over the future of the Avondale racecourse, Auckland Transport plans for Great North Road and the development of Avondale Central (also previously known as the Bai or 3 Guys site). The project team will ensure there is an understanding of any implications or mitigations required as a result of activity on these sites.

Ngā koringa ā-muri

Next steps

44. The design brief will be shared with the community:
   - through council’s website
   - emails with the link will be sent to stakeholders and all those who indicated that they would like to be kept informed about the project
   - the link will be available on the board’s Facebook page.

45. Procurement of the design team is underway. It is a multi-stage process with an Expression of Interest published widely on the New Zealand Government Electronic Tenders Service (GETS). Submissions will be evaluated and a Request for Proposal sent to short-listed firms. Concept design will start in late 2019 once the design team is contracted.

46. Engagement with mana whenua will continue through the project.

Ngā tāpirihanga

Attachments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Avondale Multipurpose Community Facility and Public Realm Design Brief (Under Separate Cover)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ngā kaihaina

Signatories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Nicola Terry - Service and Asset Planning Specialist</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authorisers</td>
<td>Mirla Edmundson - General Manager Libraries &amp; Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Glenn Boyd - Relationship Manager Henderson-Massey, Waitakere Ranges, Whau</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Te take mō te pūrongo
Purpose of the report
1. To seek adoption of the Whau Play Network Gap Analysis (Attachment A).

Whakarāpopototanga matua
Executive summary
2. The Whau Play Network Gap Analysis (Attachment A) was undertaken to identify opportunities to improve the network of play experiences in the Whau Local Board area.
3. This gap analysis will guide park specific improvements to the provision of play experiences in the Whau area.
4. From a network perspective, there are clear gaps in play space provision in the Western Green Bay, Blockhouse Bay and West Lynn Road areas.
5. The document is divided into an Executive Summary, Play Audit section and Appendices. There are a range of maps within the Play Audit section that show play typologies, play experiences, growth and play space priorities.
6. The Key Network Improvements and Opportunities table (Attachment A - Page 18) outlines the key projects that will require investment to improve the overall play space network within the Whau Local Board area.
7. Subject to local board approval, the recommendations included in The Whau Play Network Gap Analysis (Attachment A) will inform future investigation and design, as funding becomes available.

Ngā tūtohunga
Recommendation
That the Whau Local Board:

a) adopt the Whau Play Network Gap Analysis (Attachment A) to assist the local board in decision making to improve their network of play experiences.

Horopaki
Context
8. Bespoke Landscape Architects were engaged to undertake a provision assessment for play spaces in the Whau Local Board area, to identify areas where projected population increase will place a demand on the play network and to identify and evaluate opportunities and gaps in the network. The assessment also aimed to prioritise areas with most opportunity for development, and to highlight opportunities for improving the diversity of experience across the network.
9. A review of existing Auckland Council policy documents was completed to determine scope, context, limitations and methodology. Site visits of 45 play spaces were undertaken (including skate parks and half courts) to determine:
   • Play experience (e.g. swinging, sliding, balancing)
• Specialist play (e.g. water play, sand play, nature play)

10. The Play Network Opportunities Table (Attachment A - Page 18-20) groups key high and medium priority play spaces into geographic clusters to summarise network opportunities and enable holistic comparison of key network improvements.

11. Commentary also addresses significant gaps in experience and/or age group provision that contribute to a play space and do not meet minimum baseline requirements as set out in the Play Space Typologies definitions in (Attachment A - Appendix B).

Tātaritanga me ngā tohutohu
Analysis and advice

12. Places people play range from individual backyards, neighbourhood streets and local parks, to formal play spaces, beaches, regional parks and town centres. A play network consists of a group of interconnected places where play is encouraged, both formally and informally, throughout a neighbourhood, community and the wider city.

13. The Whau Local Board area is comprised of the coastal and inland suburbs situated between the Waitematā and Manukau Harbours. The area has two major town centres at New Lynn and Avondale and smaller centres located at Blockhouse Bay, Green Bay and Kelston.

14. A comprehensive open space network is shaped by the Whau River and harbour coastlines, with plans to implement a new path connection from Waitematā Harbour to Manukau Harbour. The Te Whau Pathway provides additional activation of riverside open spaces and emphasises a significant historical portage route for local mana whenua.

15. Play space typologies present in the area range from small neighbourhood play spaces, with limited experience and age provision, through to suburb play spaces and destination play spaces at Craigavon and Olympic Parks.

16. Other than obvious gaps in play space provision, due to absence of suitable reserves in some areas, play spaces are generally evenly distributed across the open space network in the Whau Local Board area.

17. Population dynamics, density and growth areas

The central New Lynn growth area is projected to receive 5,399 additional residents, resulting in a 600% increase in population density. The Avondale growth area is projected to receive 5,406 additional residents, resulting in a 62% increase in population density. Projected population growth has been used to inform priority, with play spaces within population growth areas given higher development priority.

The following play spaces are located within high population growth areas:

- Ambrico Reserve
- Avondale Central Reserve
- Canal Reserve
- Chalmers Reserve
- Olympic Park – Portage Road
- Crown Lynn Park – when finalised, would support a suburb new play space. This would ensure adequate provision for adjacent high-density housing developments and reflect the site’s proximity to New Lynn’s commercial centre and railway station.
18. **New play spaces**

There are clear gaps in play space provision at a neighbourhood level in the Western Green Bay, Blockhouse Bay and West Lynn Road areas. The following reserves are proposed to fill geographic gaps:

- Heversham Green – a neighbourhood play space is recommended
- Poturi Reserve – a neighbourhood play space is recommended
- Crown Lynn Park – a suburb play space is recommended
- Blockhouse Bay Library – a civic play space is recommended
- Waitati Reserve – a small, incidental / nature-play focused neighbourhood play space is recommended

19. **Getting the best out of the network**

Where appropriate, it is recommended that facilities in close proximity to each other are developed in a complementary manner or considered for decommissioning.

The following elements should be considered in tandem to ensure appropriate provision and network outcomes when planning and designing play spaces with overlapping catchments:

- Timing of potential decommissions
- Timing of network improvements
- Lifespan and condition of existing play spaces – with facilities identified for decommission in good condition, or those that have been recently upgraded and maintained until nearby facilities are improved or equipment retention is no longer viable

The following facilities are identified for optimisation:

- Blockhouse Bay Recreation Reserve – Exminster Street
- Patts Reserve

The following facilities have potential to be developed with complementary relationships in lieu of optimisation:

- Orchard and Taramea Reserves
- Barron Green (with Green Bay Domain)

20. **Baseline improvements**

The following high and medium priority play spaces should be considered for additional experience and / or age improvements to ensure appropriate provision relative to typology:

- Canal Reserve (swing-only play space with basketball half court)
- Hinau Reserve (swing-only play space)
- Sister René Shadbolt Park (swing-only play space)
- Crum Park – Ragley Street. It is proposed that this play space is upgraded to suburb-level to complement wider reserve function and contribute to wider network improvements, including a geographic network gap in the adjacent area.

21. **Age provision improvements**

The following high and medium priority play spaces should be considered for Senior (9-12 yrs) and / or Youth (13+ yrs) age group improvements:

- Avondale Central Reserve
- Crum Park – Ragley Street
22. **Specialised play improvements**

It is recommended that the incorporation of specialised play experiences is carefully considered at a network level to ensure maximum network impact within budgetary and operational constraints. It is not recommended that all play spaces, whether existing or proposed, contain specialised play experiences by default. Despite this, nature play, all abilities and sound experiences are typically easier to integrate within existing or proposed play spaces than water and sand play experiences, which often require a high level of investment to be successful. They also have more substantial maintenance requirements.

23. **Wheeled play and courts**

The following high and medium priority play spaces have been identified for additional wheeled play and / or court facilities:

- Crum Park – Ragley Street / Sister René Shadbolt Park (wheeled play)
- Avondale Central Reserve (wheeled play and courts)
- Green Bay Domain (courts)
- Te Kotuitanga Park (wheeled play)

24. **Water and sand play**

The following high and medium priority play spaces have been identified for additional water and / or sand experiences:

- Avondale Central Reserve (water)
- Barron Green (sand)
- Chalmers Reserve (sand)

25. **Sound**

The following high and medium priority play spaces have been identified for additional sound experiences:

- Archibald Park
- Avondale Central Reserve
- Barron Green
- Blockhouse Bay Recreation Reserve – Terry Street

26. **All abilities improvements**

The following high and medium priority play spaces have been identified for additional all abilities experiences:

- Mason Park
- Avondale Central Reserve
- Crown Lynn Park (proposed new play space)
- Eastdale Reserve
27. **Nature play**
   The following high and medium priority play spaces have been identified for additional nature play experiences:
   - Blockhouse Bay Beach Reserve
   - Chalmers Reserve
   - Fonteyn Park
   - Green Bay Domain
   - Miranda Reserve

**Ngā whakaaweawe me ngā tirohanga a te rōpū Kaunihera Council group impacts and views**
28. This assessment will assist Community Facilities to plan future work programmes and to improve play spaces through the programmed renewals process.

**Ngā whakaaweawe ā-rohe me ngā tirohanga a te poari ā-rohe Local impacts and local board views**
29. The 50% Draft Whau Play Network Gap Analysis Report was discussed on 15 March 2019 with the Whau Local Board, providing a broad overview of current findings and analysis.
30. The 100% Draft Whau Play Network Gap Analysis Report was workshopped with the Local Board in June 2019.
31. In August 2019 additional local feedback was also incorporated into the final document at the board’s request.
32. The proposed initiative will support local identity and provide local character. This initiative will also support the community to become more healthy and active through active recreation and socialization opportunities.
33. Improvements to the network will also result in a provision of experiences which are fit for purpose, for local community needs.
34. The relevant objectives and key initiatives of the Whau Local Board (2017) plan include the following:
   - **Objective 1 Whau has a network of great community buildings, sportsfields and parks: seek opportunities to increase and improve the open space and sports fields network, particularly in our high-growth areas.**

**Tauākī whakaaweawe Māori Māori impact statement**
35. The PSR 18/19 Work Programme was presented to the Parks Sport and Recreation North-Western Mana Whenua Hui in July 2018.
36. The work undertaken in the Parks and Places Team Work programme has been designed to enable meaningful engagement with iwi by outlining the potential opportunities and the how it will deliver on the outcomes identified in the Local Board Plan.
37. Projects that are initiated from this assessment will be presented again to the North-Western Mana Whenua Hui. Whanau Hapu and Iwi will have the opportunity to express interest in the projects and indicate how they would like to be involved.
Financial implications

38. Locally Delivered Initiatives (LDI) investment may be required to initiate projects identified within the assessment. Staff will work with Community Facilities to identify possible opportunities for funding as part of the future work programmes. Future work programmes will be discussed with the local board.

Risks and mitigations

39. There is risk in investing in investigation and design to initiate a project when there is no capital funding identified to deliver the physical work components.

40. The investigation and design phase of project delivery may identify issues that require the feasibility of the project to be reassessed.

Next steps

41. If recommended outcomes are agreed, staff will work with the local board to identify possible opportunities for funding as part of future Community Facilities work programmes.

Attachments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>The Whau Play Network Gap Analysis <em>(Under Separate Cover)</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Signatories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Netty Richards - Parks &amp; Places Specialist</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authorisers</td>
<td>Mace Ward - General Manager Parks, Sports and Recreation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Glenn Boyd - Relationship Manager Henderson-Massey, Waitakere Ranges, Whau</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Te take mō te pūrongo

Purpose of the report
1. To seek approval to undertake the concept plan phase for development of identified parks and open space in the New Windsor area utilising property divestment funding from the sale of 37 New Windsor Road.

Whakarāpopototanga matua

Executive summary
2. The sale of the dwelling at 37 New Windsor Road has been completed and an estimated \$824,282 from this property divestment will be available to the Whau Local Board for allocation to projects which enhance activities or services at the site or on other sites or properties within the local board area.

3. Staff undertook an investigation of the New Windsor and surrounding suburbs parks and open space network to determine sites with the potential to be developed. Options were then presented to the local board for their consideration and three parks have been prioritised for development, utilising the funds from the property divestment. These parks are Arthur Currey Reserve, Chalmers Reserve and Whitney Green.

Ngā tūtohunga

Recommendations
That the Whau Local Board:

a) approve Arthur Currey Reserve, Chalmers Reserve and Whitney Green as priority parks for development concept planning, utilising property divestment funding from the sale of 37 New Windsor Road.

b) note that concept planning for Arthur Currey Reserve, Chalmers Reserve and Whitney Green is not able to commence until funding from the sale of 37 New Windsor Road is made available to the local board.

c) note the local board will formally approve concept designs prior to any physical works being undertaken.

Horopaki

Context

Service Property Optimisation
4. The property at 37 New Windsor Road has been sold and under the Service Property Optimisation Guidelines adopted by Council’s Finance and Performance Committee in March 2015, funding from the divestment should be used to enhance activities or services on site or on other sites or properties within the Whau Local Board area. The purpose of the optimisation guidelines is to enable local communities to benefit from the divestment of local assets which are no longer required for service purposes.

Investigation of options for park and open space development

5. Council staff undertook investigations to consider options for the use of funding provided from the divestment. Parks in the New Windsor and surrounding suburbs were considered.
Thought was given to existing park assets and their condition, existing and future projects, expected growth trends and strategic documents such as the 2017 Parks Services Strategic Assessment for New Windsor Divestment Reinvestment, the Whau Neighbourhood Greenways Plan, Whau Open Space Network Plan and the Draft Play Network Gap Analysis.

Findings were discussed with the local board at a workshop on 31 July 2019 to obtain feedback on their priorities.

### Tātaritanga me ngā tohutohu
**Analysis and advice**

**New Windsor area: park provision and investment consideration**

7. The 2017 Parks Services Strategic Assessment for New Windsor Divestment Reinvestment states that New Windsor has good provision of open space, with neighbourhood and suburb parks spread across the area with radial distances of 400 metres, as suggested in Auckland Council’s Open Space Provision Policy.

8. The table below documents parks and open space within or near the boundary of New Windsor which have been considered for development:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Park Name</th>
<th>Investigation findings</th>
<th>Consideration for development</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>37 Tiverton Road</td>
<td><strong>Existing assets and use:</strong> Long strip of land set in a transport slip way below Tiverton Road. Lovely native trees on western edge of park.</td>
<td>Site would potentially service a small number of residents. Space is limited for park development and not recommended at this time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Strategic alignment:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Whau Neighbourhood Greenways Plan – no reference found.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Draft Play Network Gap Analysis – no reference found.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Whau Open Space Network Plan – no reference found.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arthur Currey Reserve</td>
<td><strong>Existing assets and use:</strong> Amenity trees, park seat and sign. Open grass area.</td>
<td>Development potential is available in the park and must begin with consultation with local residents. Development is recommended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Strategic alignment:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Whau Neighbourhood Greenways Plan – no change required.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Draft Play Network Gap Analysis – no reference found.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Whau Open Space Network Plan – consider play elements (i.e. swing set) and park furniture.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avondale Central Reserve</td>
<td><strong>Existing assets and use:</strong> Playground and park furniture.</td>
<td>Development potential is available in this large open space however this project must be undertaken in alignment with the Avondale Library and Community Centre renewal project.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Strategic alignment:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Whau Neighbourhood Greenways Plan – no change required.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Draft Play Network Gap Analysis – high priority rating from centralised position and location within high population growth area. The site is zoned ‘Business – Town Centre’ in the Unitary Plan and will likely be redeveloped (without a playspace) as part of Avondale’s town centre regeneration. In spite of this, it is recommended that a large civic or suburb-level playspace is prioritised, potentially within plans for Avondale’s community ‘heart’; with specialised play experiences like water, sound, all abilities, wheeled play and courts prioritised alongside a wide range of typical play experiences (including commonly omitted jumping and balancing experiences). It is also recommended that</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location</td>
<td>Existing assets and use:</td>
<td>Strategic alignment:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chalmers Reserve</td>
<td>Playground requires renewal in the next few years. Existing BBQ and picnic tables. Good footpath network linking Chalmers Road, Blockhouse Bay Road and Barrhead Place. Open grass play area. New Lynn/Avondale cycle link will be traveling through the park in the future.</td>
<td>Whau Neighbourhood Greenways Plan – no change required. Draft Play Network Gap Analysis – high priority rating from location within high population growth area. Specialised play improvement proposed. Whau Open Space Network Plan – develop and implement a concept plan – address stormwater function of park; consider cycleway (Auckland Transport), relocating playground, developing open space to provide for further activities, and additional or succession tree planting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dickey Reserve</td>
<td>Footpath linking Dickey Street, Westminster and Maioro Street, walkway lighting, playground, park furniture.</td>
<td>Whau Neighbourhood Greenways Plan – no change required. Draft Play Network Gap Analysis – low priority rating from good experience provision; with age provision complementing Brydon Place Reserve.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
and Valonia Skatepark’s Senior/Youth focus. Consider retaining Early Childhood - Junior focus and including additional nature play experiences.
Provide signage to raise awareness of park.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Miranda Reserve</th>
<th><strong>Existing assets and use:</strong> Footpath linkages from Wolverton Road (when reinstated), Miranda Street and Blockhouse Bay Road. Playground – due for renewal and will be effected by Watercare infrastructure upgrade. Park furniture and basketball half courts. Frequent antisocial behavior in park – graffiti and broken glass, drinking</th>
<th>Development potential is available in the park and must begin with consultation with local residents. Development is recommended, however this should be undertaken when the playground is renewed following completion of the waste water system upgrade in 2021/2022.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Strategic alignment:</strong></td>
<td>Whau Neighbourhood Greenways Plan – proposed new route connecting Temuka Gardens.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Draft Play Network Gap Analysis – medium priority rating from network position (adjacent to network gap between Blockhouse Bay and Boundary Roads). Consider replacing with new neighbourhood playspace featuring climbing/crawling, sliding, swinging, balancing, jumping, creative/imaginative, spinning and nature play experiences for the Early Childhood to Senior age groups.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Whau Open Space Network Plan – consider acquisition of land or a land exchange to widen street frontage onto Wolverton Road to provide for Greenways connection. Undertake riparian ecological restoration with volunteer group. Provide several view shafts and accesses to the stream edge to encourage natural play opportunities and connections. Upgrade play space, park furniture and footpath as a part of the renewal.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Te Kotuitanga Park</th>
<th><strong>Existing assets and use:</strong> Perimeter footpath, shelter, furniture, swing set, carpark.</th>
<th>A small amount of development potential is available in the park. Development is recommended.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Strategic alignment:</strong></td>
<td>Whau Neighbourhood Greenways Plan – no reference found.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Draft Play Network Gap Analysis – low priority rating from limited opportunity for expansion, despite poor experience provision. Long term consider sensitive inclusion of additional balancing, creative/imaginative and nature play experiences for the Early Childhood to Junior age groups.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Whau Open Space Network Plan – no reference found.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Valonia Reserve</th>
<th><strong>Existing assets and use:</strong> Footpath linking into Alan Wood Reserve, sports fields, carpark, toilet block and drinking fountain. Extensive skate park, half court, seating and drinking fountain.</th>
<th>Park development is not recommended at Valonia Reserve at present.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Strategic alignment:</strong></td>
<td>Whau Neighbourhood Greenways Plan – no change required.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Draft Play Network Gap Analysis – no reference found.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9. During the investigation the New Windsor and surrounding suburbs the following sites were found to have potential for immediate consideration:
   - Arthur Currey Reserve
   - Chalmers Reserve
   - Whitney Green.

10. These parks have limited or no formalised recreational opportunities at present and/or have assets reaching the end of their life and are ready for replacement.

11. The following parks have development potential but are not recommended for consideration at this time due to the timing of the available budget:
   - Avondale Central Reserve
   - Dallas Reserve
   - Dickey Reserve
   - Miranda Reserve
   - Te Koutuitanga Park
   - Waitati Reserve.

12. Development is not recommended at 37 Tiverton Road, Brydon Place Reserve and Valonia Reserve at this time.

13. Consultation with local residents is required at each of the selected parks as a part of the concept phase to determine community aspirations and needs.

**Ngā whakaaweawe me ngā tirohanga a te rōpū Kaunihera Council group impacts and views**

14. Collaboration between Parks Services and Community Facilities staff assisted in undertaking the investigation. Each park was visited and considered for its development potential. The outcome is an agreed recommendation as provided in this report.
Ngā whakaaweawe ā-rohe me ngā tirohanga a te poari ā-rohe
Local impacts and local board views

15. The development of parks and open spaces in the New Windsor area has the potential to enhance the lives of local residents, providing them with opportunities to play and socialise, and enjoy nature. Consultation will assist staff in understanding community needs.

16. At a workshop on 31 July 2019 the local board identified Arthur Currey Reserve, Chalmers Reserve and Whitney Green as their priority parks for development utilising the divestment funding. It was discussed that because Arthur Currey Reserve and Chalmers Reserve are within a short distance of each other, they should offer complimentary but different recreational opportunities.

17. The local board requested that staff complete high level concept designs and cost estimates for each of the parks and bring this information to a subsequent local board workshop for consideration and discussion.

18. This report seeks formal resolution of the local board to prepare concept designs for these three parks. The local board will be engaged via workshop in the process of preparing the concept designs, and will formally approve concept designs prior to any physical works being undertaken.

Tauākī whakaaweawe Māori
Māori impact statement

19. Mana whenua will be involved in the early stages of concept design development, providing input and advice on cultural matters.

20. The development of the identified parks will benefit local communities including Māori.

Ngā ritenga ā-pūtea
Financial implications

21. The funding from the sale of 37 New Windsor Street has not yet formally been received into the local board’s budget. The project will not commence until this funding is confirmed.

22. The concept design phase of the project will determine high level cost estimates for each of the recommended parks. During a future workshop with the Whau Local Board, staff will discuss project priorities and determine allocation of funding. This will then be formally approved by the local board.

Ngā raru tūpono me ngā whakamaurutanga
Risks and mitigations

23. Consultation will provide information on concerns from residents who may be impacted by the development of each park. This will enable staff to look for ways to mitigate any issues at the early stage of concept design development.

Ngā koringa ā-muri
Next steps

24. When the budget is formally received by Community Facilities a project will begin. A consultation plan will be completed to assist in undertaking community engagement.

Ngā tāpirihanga
Attachments

There are no attachments for this report.
## Ngā kaihaina

### Signatories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Helen Biffin - Work Programme Lead</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Authorisers     | Rod Sheridan - General Manager Community Facilities  
|                 | Glenn Boyd - Relationship Manager Henderson-Massey, Waitakere Ranges, Whau |

---

Development plan for parks and open space in New Windsor area

Page 53
Grant of a new community lease to Avondale Community Action, 33-37 Eastdale Road, Avondale

File No.: CP2019/14825

Te take mō te pūrongo

Purpose of the report

1. To grant a new community lease to Avondale Community Action for the council-owned clubrooms and two garage spaces on Eastdale Reserve, 33-37 Eastdale Road, Avondale.

Whakarāpopototanga matua

Executive summary

2. An expression of interest process was undertaken to lease the council-owned clubrooms and two garage spaces located on Eastdale Reserve.

3. At its business meeting of 22 May 2019, the Whau Local Board approved the public notification of its intention to grant a new community lease to Avondale Community Action.

4. Council staff have publicly notified and engaged with iwi groups on Auckland Council’s intention to grant the proposed new community lease. All statutory requirements have now been satisfied.

5. The Auckland Council Community Occupancy Guidelines 2012 recommends a lease term of one year with a further one year right of renewal, for newly established community groups for leases over council-owned buildings and land.

6. This report recommends that the Whau Local Board grant a new community lease to Avondale Community Action for the council-owned clubrooms and two garage spaces on Eastdale Reserve.

Ngā tūtohunga

Recommendations

That the Whau Local Board:

a) grant Avondale Community Action a new community lease issued under the Local Government Act 2002 for the Auckland Council owned former clubrooms and two garage spaces located on part of Eastdale Reserve, 33-37 Eastdale Road, Avondale, described as Lot 1 on Deposited Plan 33238 (Attachment A – site plan) subject to the following terms and conditions:

i) term - one year commencing 1 October 2019 with one right of renewal of one-year;

ii) rent - $1.00 plus GST per annum if demanded;

iii) maintenance fee - $500 plus GST per annum;

iv) Avondale Community Action Community Outcomes Plan as approved be attached to the lease document (Attachment B);

b) approve all other terms and conditions in accordance with the Auckland Council Community Occupancy Guidelines July 2012 and the Local Government Act 2002.
Horopaki

Context
7. This report considers the leasing of the council-owned clubrooms and two garage spaces located on Eastdale Reserve, 33-37 Eastdale Road, Avondale.
8. The Whau Local Board is the allocated authority relating to local, recreation, sport and community facilities, including community leasing matters.

Tātaritanga me ngā tohutohu

Analysis and advice

The Facility
9. Located on Eastdale Reserve, between the council owned residential property and the changing room and toilet block, is the council owned former groundsman shed comprising six garages and a two-storey office space with 80m² of floor area that has been converted into clubrooms.
10. The clubrooms consist of a kitchen, bathroom facilities and meeting space. There is no lift access to the second floor. The two garage spaces available are the ones closest to the clubrooms and measure approximately 42m². There is no internal access between the garages and clubrooms. Auckland Council will retain the other four garage spaces for use by a full facility maintenance contractor.

The land
11. The clubrooms and garage spaces are located on Lot 1 on Deposited Plan 33238 of Eastdale Reserve, 33-37 Eastdale Road, Avondale. Lot 1 is held in fee simple by Auckland Council under the Local Government Act 2002.

Intention to grant a lease
12. At its business meeting of 22 May 2019, the Whau Local Board approved the public notification of Auckland Council’s intention to grant Avondale Community Action (the group) a new community lease under the Local Government Act 2002 subject to public notification, resolution number WH/2019/62.

Public notification and iwi engagement
13. In accordance with section 138 of the Local Government Act 2002, any lease or licence for a term in excess of six months must be publicly notified. Similarly, engagement with mana whenua identified as having an interest in land in the Whau Local Board area was required under Section 81 of the Act.
14. The public notification process involved the publishing of an advertisement about the lease proposal. The advertisement was published in the Western and Central Leaders on 20 June 2019 and on the Auckland Council website. Public were invited to make submissions and or objections and were given one calendar month to submit these and advise whether they wish to be heard. During this period, no submissions or objections were received.

The group
15. Avondale Community Action together with I Love Avondale (under the umbrella of Together We Are Avondale) applied for a lease. It has been agreed between the two groups that the lease will be held in the name of Avondale Community Action.
16. Avondale Community Action is a charitable trust established in 2012 to be a source of local information, provide a voice for the community and help enable smaller, emerging groups to get started.
17. Although Avondale Community Action plans to use the office and shed space as its base it will mainly work with other groups and individuals to utilise and activate the facility as a whole.
18. The group has had initial conversations with potential community partners regarding activating the space for recreational activities such as boot camps, bike hub, learn to ride as well as a space for youth to gather with mentoring and support sessions and workshops available.

19. In 2015 the group secured government funding for two community developers collectively known as I Love Avondale. The community developers promote the Avondale neighbourhood, the people, stories, places and history.

Ngā whakaaweawe me ngā tirohanga a te rōpū Kaunihera
Council group impacts and views

20. In compiling the recommendations contained herein staff have obtained input from colleagues in Parks, Sports and Recreation, Community Development and Operational Management and Maintenance. No concerns were raised regarding the proposed lease to Avondale Community Action.

21. The proposed new lease has no identified impact on other parts of the council group. The views of council controlled organisations were not required for the preparation of this report’s advice.

Ngā whakaaweawe ā-rohe me ngā tirohanga a te poari ā-rohe
Local impacts and local board views

22. At its business meeting of 22 May 2019, the Whau Local Board approved the public notification of Auckland Council’s intention to grant Avondale Community Action a new community lease, resolution number WH/2019/62.

23. The recommendations within this report support the Whau Local Board Plan 2017 outcomes:
   - Great neighbourhoods with strong community connections, capacity and voices
   - Strong local businesses and more quality local jobs
   - Celebrating our creative edge in our streets, neighbourhoods and communities.

Tauākī whakaaweawe Māori
Māori impact statement

24. Auckland Council is committed to meeting its responsibilities under Te Tiriti o Waitangi and its broader legal obligations to Māori. The council recognises these responsibilities are distinct from the Crown’s Treaty obligations and fall within a local government Tāmaki Makaurau context. These commitments are articulated in the council’s key strategic planning documents the Auckland Plan, the Long-term Plan 2015-2025, the Unitary Plan and Local Board Plans.

25. Engagement was undertaken in September 2018 with 12 mana whenua identified as having an interest in land in the Whau Local Board area about a proposed new community lease. Engagement involved:
   - a presentation at the North West Mana Whenua Forum held in Orewa
   - email contact containing detailed information on the reserve, the group and inviting iwi representatives to hui and or for a kaitiaki site visit to comment on any spiritual, cultural or environmental impact with respect to the proposal.

26. No objections were raised by the mana whenua representatives who responded.

27. Further engagement was undertaken by email on 5 June 2019 regarding the intention to grant a new lease to Avondale Community Action and advising that the public notice would be advertised in the Western and Central Leaders.
28. There were no submissions or objections to the proposal from any of the iwi groups contacted.

**Ngā ritenga ā-pūtea**  
**Financial implications**

29. The costs associated with public notification and engagement with iwi about council's intention to grant a new community lease has been borne by the Community Facilities Department.

**Ngā raru tūpono me ngā whakamaurutanga**  
**Risks and mitigations**

30. If the Whau Local Board resolves not to grant a new lease to the group, the council-owned building will remain vacant which in turn will have a negative impact on the desired local board outcomes.

31. Buildings that are left vacant are more susceptible to being vandalised.

**Ngā koringa ā-muri**  
**Next steps**

32. Subject to the Whau Local Board granting a new community lease, council staff will work with Avondale Community Action to finalise the lease agreement.

**Ngā tāpirihanga**  
**Attachments**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Attachment A Site Plan</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Attachment B Community Outcomes Plan</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ngā kaihaina**  
**Signatories**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Ron Johnson - Lease Advisor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Authorisers       | Rod Sheridan - General Manager Community Facilities  
|                   | Glenn Boyd - Relationship Manager Henderson-Massey, Waitakere Ranges, Whau |
Attachment A: Site plan for Avondale Community Action, Eastdale Reserve, 33-37 Eastdale Road, Avondale

Reserve outlined in blue and lease area being the building footprint of 82m² (more or less) outlined in red and marked A.
## Attachment B: Avondale Community Action Community Outcomes Plan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name and Location of Land/Facility</th>
<th>Eastdale Reserve, 33-37 Eastdale Road, Avondale</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name of the Community it serves</td>
<td>Avondale and the surrounding suburbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Board Area</td>
<td>Whau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of Community Group</td>
<td>Avondale Community Action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postal Address</td>
<td>PO Box 19404, Avondale 1746</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Auckland Council and/or Local Board Outcomes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Performance Measure</th>
<th>Target</th>
<th>Achievements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LB Outcome 2: Great neighbourhoods with strong community connections, capacity and voices</strong>&lt;br&gt;The Whau has many strong communities with great connections and organisations, all supporting one another</td>
<td>List the groups that utilise/book the facility</td>
<td>List the community organisations/groups that are partnered with to co-deliver these activities/programmes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AP: Belonging and Participation</strong>&lt;br&gt;Foster an inclusive Auckland where everyone belongs</td>
<td>List the recreation activities/programmes delivered from the facility</td>
<td>List the educational and cultural awareness activities/programmes delivered from the facility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Promote the facility and the activities</strong></td>
<td>Generate three promotional initiatives per year</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Facility up keep</strong></td>
<td>List the initiatives generated</td>
<td>Report any external graffiti to Auckland council in a timely manner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Show how initiatives were implemented</td>
<td>Annual report</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Attachment B: Avondale Community Action Community Outcomes Plan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LB Outcome 5: Strong local businesses and more quality local jobs</th>
<th>Promote local employment opportunities via a job board or other initiatives</th>
<th>List the promotional opportunities and other initiatives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Foster stronger local connections between school leavers, education providers and businesses so young people don’t miss out on jobs. Support more promotion of local jobs to local people.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AP: Opportunity and Prosperity</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Annual report**
Approval for a new road name at 59-69 Maple Street & 68 Avondale Road, Avondale

Te take mō te pūrongo

Purpose of the report

1. To seek approval from the Whau Local Board to name a new private road, being a commonly owned access lot, created by way of a subdivision development at 59-69 Maple Street & 68 Avondale Road, Avondale

Whakarāpopototanga matua

Executive summary

2. Auckland Council has Road Naming Guidelines that set out the requirements and criteria of the Council for proposed road names. These requirements and criteria have been applied in this situation to ensure consistency of road naming across the Auckland Region.

3. On behalf of the developer and applicant, Housing New Zealand has proposed the following names for consideration by the Local Board:
   - Pūngāwerewere Lane (Applicant Preferred)
   - Whakarangatira Lane (Alternative 1)
   - Rangimatariki Lane (Alternative 2)

4. Any of the three proposed road name options would be acceptable for the local board to approve for use in this location, having been assessed to ensure that they meet Auckland Council’s Road Naming Guidelines and the National Addressing Standards for road naming. All technical standards are met and the names are not duplicated anywhere else in the region. Mana Whenua were also consulted. Therefore it is up to the local board to decide upon the thematic suitability of the names within the local context.

Ngā tūtohunga

Recommendation

That the Whau Local Board:

a) approve the name Pūngāwerewere Lane for the new private road created by way of subdivision at 59-69 Maple Street & 68 Avondale Road, Avondale in accordance with section 319(1)(j) of the Local Government Act 1974 (resource consent reference BUN60312170, SUB60312174).

Horopaki

Context

5. Resource consent BUN60312170 (including subdivision consent SUB60312174) was issued April 2018 for the construction of thirty residential units and one commonly owned access lot (COAL).

6. In accordance with the National Addressing Standards for road naming (the AS/NZS 4819-2011 standard), the COAL requires a road name because it serves more than 5 lots.

7. The units are due for completion in mid 2020; however the road name is required as soon as possible for the subdivision titles and new water meter connections.
8. Site and location plans of the development can be found in Attachments A and B respectively.

**Tātaritanga me ngā tohutohu**

**Analysis and advice**

9. The Auckland Council Road Naming Guidelines allow that where a new road needs to be named as a result of a subdivision or development, the subdivider/developer shall be given the opportunity of suggesting their preferred new road name/s for the Local Board’s approval.

10. Auckland Council’s road naming criteria typically require that road names reflect one of the following local themes, with the use of Maori names being actively encouraged:
   - a historical or ancestral linkage to an area;
   - a particular landscape, environmental or biodiversity theme or feature; or
   - an existing (or introduced) thematic identity in the area.

11. The Applicant’s proposed names and meanings are set out in the table below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proposed Names &amp; Preferences</th>
<th>Meaning (as described by applicant)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pūngāwerewere Lane</strong></td>
<td>Maori word meaning: <em>(noun)</em> Spider</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Applicant preferred)</td>
<td>This name has been chosen in relation to the sculpture of the Avondale Spider in the town centre which represents an Australian Huntsman spider. Colonies of these large spiders were established in Avondale in the 1920s, believed to have arrived on imported timber or packing cases.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Whakarangatira Lane         | Maori word meaning: *(verb)* to ennoble, treat with dignity, honour, revere, venerate. |
| (alternative 1)             | This name has been chosen to honour the Maori Pioneer Battalion from the First World War. This battalion was based at Avondale Racecourse before going overseas. |

| Rangimatariki Lane          | There were once many seasonal camps and papakainga (villages) along the edges of Te Whau and Te Auaunga in Avondale. These camps were used particularly around the Whau to hunt for the Kuaka or Godwit. Rangimatariki is one such papakainga that was located near the Patiki Road, Avondale interchange. |
| (alternative 2)             | |

12. **Assessment:** The names proposed by the Applicant have been assessed to ensure that they meet Auckland Council’s Road Naming Guidelines and the National Addressing Standards for road naming. All technical standards are met and the names are not duplicated anywhere else in the region, therefore it is up to the local board to decide upon the thematic suitability of the names within the local context.

13. **Confirmation:** Land Information New Zealand (LINZ) has confirmed that all of the proposed names are acceptable and not duplicated elsewhere in the region.

14. **Road type:** ‘Lane’ is an acceptable road type for the new private road, suiting the form and layout of the road, as per the Auckland Council Road Naming Guidelines.

15. **Iwi Consultation:** All relevant local iwi were written to (via email) and invited to comment. Only Ngai Tai ki Tamaki responded, commenting that they did not object to any of the applicant’s names. No other iwi provided responses or comments. It is therefore implied that no iwi were opposed to the use of any of the proposed names in this location for this small private road.
Ngā whakaaweawe me ngā tirohanga a te rōpū Kaunihera
Council group impacts and views
16. The decision sought for this report has no identified impacts on other parts of the council group. The views of council controlled organisations were not required for the preparation of the report’s advice.

Ngā whakaaweawe ā-rohe me ngā tirohanga a te poari ā-rohe
Local impacts and local board views
17. The decision sought for this report does not trigger any significant policy and is not considered to have any immediate local impact beyond those outlined in this report.

Tauākī whakaaweawe Māori
Māori impact statement
18. The review sought from the Whau Local Board on this report is linked to the Auckland Plan Outcome “A Maori identity that is Auckland’s point of difference in the world”. The use of Maori names for roads, buildings and other public places is an opportunity to publicly demonstrate Maori identity.
19. All three of the applicant’s road name options are Maori and are supported by Ngai Tai ki Tamaki.

Ngā ritenga ā-pūtea
Financial implications
20. The applicant has responsibility for ensuring that appropriate signage will be installed accordingly once approval is obtained for the new road names.

Ngā raru tūpono me ngā whakamaurutanga
Risks and mitigations
21. There are no significant risks to council as road naming is a routine part of the subdivision development process, with consultation being a key part of the process.

Ngā koringa ā-muri
Next steps
22. Approved road names are notified to Land Information New Zealand who records them on their New Zealand wide land information database which includes street addresses issued by councils.

Ngā tāpirihanga
Attachments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Attachment A - Site Plan</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Attachment B - Location Plan</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Ngā kaihaina

**Signatories**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Elizabeth Salter - Subdivision Technical Officer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authorisers</td>
<td>David Snowdon - Team Leader Subdivision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Glenn Boyd - Relationship Manager Henderson-Massey, Waitakere Ranges, Whau</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Attachment A: Site Plan for 59-69 Maple Street & 68 Avondale Road, Avondale

Approval for a new road name at 59-69 Maple Street & 68 Avondale Road, Avondale
Attachment B: Location plan for 59-69 Maple Street & 68 Avondale Road, Avondale
Approval for a new road name at 5, 7 and 7B Mayville Avenue, New Lynn

File No.: CP2019/15280

Te take mō te pūrongo
Purpose of the report
1. To seek approval from the Whau Local Board to name a new private road, being a commonly owned access lot, created by way of a subdivision development at 5, 7 and 7B Mayville Avenue, New Lynn (Special Housing Area).

Whakarāpopototanga matua
Executive summary
2. Auckland Council has Road Naming Guidelines that set out the requirements and criteria of the Council for proposed road names. These requirements and criteria have been applied in this situation to ensure consistency of road naming across the Auckland Region.

3. On behalf of the developer and applicant, Housing New Zealand has proposed the following names for consideration by the Local Board:
   - Matuaiwi Close (Applicant Preferred)
   - Ngāokeoke Close (Alternative 1)
   - Pereti Close (Alternative 2)

4. Any of the three proposed road name options would be acceptable for the local board to approve for use in this location, having been assessed to ensure that they meet Auckland Council’s Road Naming Guidelines and the National Addressing Standards for road naming. All technical standards are met and the names are not duplicated anywhere else in the region. Mana Whenua were also consulted. Therefore it is up to the local board to decide upon the thematic suitability of the names within the local context.

Ngā tūtohunga
Recommendation
That the Whau Local Board:
a) approve the name Matuaiwi Close for the new private road created by way of subdivision at 5, 7 and 7B Mayville Avenue, New Lynn in accordance with section 319(1)(j) of the Local Government Act 1974 (resource consent reference BUN30585817, SUB60039246 (WC_SUB-2016-2509)).

Horopaki
Context
5. Resource consent BUN30585817 (including subdivision reference SUB60039246 (legacy reference: WC_SUB-2016-2509)) was issued May 2017 for the construction of ten residential units and one commonly owned access lot (COAL), under the Housing Accords and Special Housing Area Act 2013 (HASHAA).

6. In accordance with the National Addressing Standards for road naming (the AS/NZS 4819-2011 standard), the COAL requires a road name because it serves more than 5 lots.

7. The units are due for completion in mid 2020; however the road name is required as soon as possible for the subdivision titles and new water meter connections.
8. Site and location plans of the development can be found in Attachments A and B respectively.

**Tātaritanga me ngā tohutohu**

**Analysis and advice**

9. The Auckland Council Road Naming Guidelines allow that where a new road needs to be named as a result of a subdivision or development, the subdivider/developer shall be given the opportunity of suggesting their preferred new road name/s for the Local Board’s approval.

10. Auckland Council’s road naming criteria typically require that road names reflect one of the following local themes, with the use of Maori names being actively encouraged:
    - a historical or ancestral linkage to an area;
    - a particular landscape, environmental or biodiversity theme or feature; or
    - an existing (or introduced) thematic identity in the area.

11. **Theme:** The applicant has proposed names that reference New Lynn’s history with Crown Lynn, as well as the Waitakere Ranges.

12. The Applicant’s proposed names and meanings are set out in the table below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proposed Names &amp; Preferences</th>
<th>Meaning (as described by applicant)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Matuaiwi Close</strong> (Applicant preferred)</td>
<td>Maori word meaning: (noun) main range of hills, row of hills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ngāokeoke Close</strong> (alternative 1)</td>
<td>Maori word meaning: (noun) peripatus, velvet worm. Peripatus or velvet worms are invertebrate animals that range in length from 2 to 8 cm. They look a bit like caterpillars and have pairs of stumpy legs along the length of their body. They are found in most forested parts of New Zealand, but also linger in remnant patches, scrub and gardens. They are also occasionally found in pasture, alpine and city park sites. (Source - Department of Conservation website: <a href="https://www.doc.govt.nz/nature/native-animals/invertebrates/peripatus-ngaokeoke/">https://www.doc.govt.nz/nature/native-animals/invertebrates/peripatus-ngaokeoke/</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pereti Close</strong> (alternative 2)</td>
<td>Maori word meaning: (noun) plate, platter, crockery, pottery.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13. **Assessment:** The names proposed by the Applicant have been assessed to ensure that they meet Auckland Council’s Road Naming Guidelines and the National Addressing Standards for road naming. All technical standards are met and the names are not duplicated anywhere else in the region, therefore it is up to the local board to decide upon the thematic suitability of the names within the local context.

14. **Confirmation:** Land Information New Zealand (LINZ) has confirmed that all of the proposed names are acceptable and not duplicated elsewhere in the region.

15. **Road type:** ‘Close’ is an acceptable road type for the new private road, suiting the form and layout of the road, as per the Auckland Council Road Naming Guidelines.

16. **Iwi Consultation:** All relevant local iwi were written to (via email) and invited to comment. Most responses from mana whenua were to defer to other groups, who in turn provided no further responses or comments. Only Ngai Tai kī Tamaki provided feedback, commenting that they did not object to any of the applicant’s names.
17. No other iwi provided responses or comments. It is therefore implied that no iwi were opposed to the use of any of the proposed names in this location for this small private road.

**Ngā whakaaweawe me ngā tirohanga a te rōpū Kaunihera**  
*Council group impacts and views*

18. The decision sought for this report has no identified impacts on other parts of the council group. The views of council controlled organisations were not required for the preparation of the report’s advice.

**Ngā whakaaweawe ā-rohe me ngā tirohanga a te poari ā-rohe**  
*Local impacts and local board views*

19. The decision sought for this report does not trigger any significant policy and is not considered to have any immediate local impact beyond those outlined in this report.

**Tauākī whakaaweawe Māori**  
*Māori impact statement*

20. The review sought from the Whau Local Board on this report is linked to the Auckland Plan Outcome “A Māori identity that is Auckland’s point of difference in the world”. The use of Māori names for roads, buildings and other public places is an opportunity to publicly demonstrate Māori identity.

21. All three of the applicant’s road name options are Māori and are supported by Ngai Tai ki Tamaki.

**Ngā ritenga ā-pūtea**  
*Financial implications*

22. The applicant has responsibility for ensuring that appropriate signage will be installed accordingly once approval is obtained for the new road names.

**Ngā raru tūpono me ngā whakamaurutanga**  
*Risks and mitigations*

23. There are no significant risks to council as road naming is a routine part of the subdivision development process, with consultation being a key part of the process.

**Ngā koringa ā-muri**  
*Next steps*

24. Approved road names are notified to Land Information New Zealand who records them on their New Zealand wide land information database which includes street addresses issued by councils.

**Ngā tāpirihanga**  
*Attachments*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Attachment A - Site Plan</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Attachment B - Location Plan</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Ngā kaihaina

## Signatories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Elizabeth Salter - Subdivision Technical Officer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authorisers</td>
<td>David Snowdon - Team Leader Subdivision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Glenn Boyd - Relationship Manager Henderson-Massey, Waitakere Ranges, Whau</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Attachment A: Site Plan for 5, 7 and 7B Mayville Avenue, New Lynn
Approval for a new road name at 5, 7 and 7B Mayville Avenue, New Lynn

Attachment B: Location plan for 5, 7 and 7B Mayville Avenue, New Lynn

Item 18
Approval for a new road name at 5, 7 and 7B Mayville Avenue, New Lynn
Auckland Film Protocol consultation feedback and recommended changes

File No.: CP2019/14476

Te take mō te pūrongo
Purpose of the report

1. To receive a summary of consultation feedback on the draft Auckland Film Protocol, and to endorse the subsequently updated draft Auckland Film Protocol.

Whakarāpopototanga matua
Executive summary

2. Auckland Council is currently reviewing the Auckland Film Protocol. The Auckland Film Protocol sets out:
   - the commitment of the council group to supporting filming in Auckland;
   - expectations and rules that filmmakers must abide by when filming in Auckland; and
   - provides guidance for filmmakers on the process for approval to film in Auckland.

3. The purpose of the review was to ensure that the Auckland Film Protocol is up-to-date and identify emerging trends, issues or opportunities that should be addressed. Content of the Auckland Film Protocol was reviewed against legislation referenced in the document and against policies and plans of the Auckland Council group to identify areas where the Auckland Film Protocol should be updated. Engagement with staff involved in the process of assessing and approving film permit applications, from across the council group, was undertaken to inform the review and proposed amendments to the Protocol.

4. A revised draft of the Auckland Film Protocol was reported to the Environment and Community Committee in June 2019 for consideration and was approved for public consultation (resolution number ENV/2019/73).

5. The following is a summary of the key changes made to the Auckland Film Protocol before public consultation was undertaken:
   - **Native species**: new content added stating that Auckland Council may place additional conditions on film permits to protect native species
   - **Kauri dieback**: new content added providing information about kauri dieback and stating that filmmakers will be required to clean equipment to council specifications when filming in areas where kauri are present.
   - **Drones**: new content added stating that a film permit is required for commercial filming and requiring filmmakers to comply with Civil Aviation rules, Auckland Council bylaws and conditions.
   - **Historic heritage**: new content added stating that filming in proximity to historic (including cultural) heritage will be subject to conditions to protect these sites.
   - **Health and safety**: new content added to reflect the new Health and Safety at work Act 2015 and requirements to prepare a site specific health and safety plan.
   - Content of the Auckland Film Protocol was updated to reflect current policy, plans and bylaws of Auckland Council. Some structural and editorial amendments were also made to improve the logic, flow and readability of the document.

6. Public consultation was undertaken over a three week period between 21 June and 12 July 2019.
7. A total of 74 submissions were received during the public consultation period. The Whau Local Board residents provided a total of two submissions on the draft Auckland Film Protocol, representing 3% percent of all submissions. Staff are proposing some changes to the draft Auckland Film Protocol to address submitter concerns; the proposed changes to the draft Auckland Film protocol are shown in track changes in Attachment B.

8. This report provides a summary of public feedback and of proposed changes to the draft Auckland Film Protocol to address feedback. The following is a high-level summary of the key changes proposed to the Auckland Film Protocol in response to public consultation:

- **Natural environment:** include stronger messaging about the importance of respecting Auckland’s natural environment, that film permits may be subject to conditions to manage impacts and/or that filming may be subject to restrictions where these impacts cannot be appropriately managed.

- **Native species:** include stronger messages around the potential impact of filming on native species, such as birds and that filming permits may be subject to conditions to manage impacts and/or that filming may be subject to restrictions where these impacts cannot be appropriately managed.

- **Kauri dieback:** amend to ensure that conditions may be placed on film permits in any public open space (controlled by Auckland Council) where kauri are present.

- **Drones:** include additional guidance on the use of drones around native birds and in proximity to other users of public open space and adjoining private properties.

- **Impact on access to public open space:** include stronger messages around the need for filmmakers to be respectful of other users of public open space and state that film permits give limited permission to occupy public open space.

- **Compliance and enforcement:** include stronger messages around the requirement for filmmakers to comply with the Auckland Council policies, plans, bylaws and the terms and conditions of their film permit.

9. Submission themes and proposed changes are summarised in Attachment A.

**Ngā tūtohunga**

**Recommendations**

That the Whau Local Board:

a) receive a summary of consultation feedback, received 21 June and 12 July 2019, on the draft Auckland Film Protocol

b) endorse the updated draft Auckland Film Protocol (Attachment B) and provide any feedback on the recommended changes.

c) note that local board feedback will be included in a report to the Environment and Community Committee in September 2019, seeking approval for the proposed changes to the draft Auckland Film Protocol.

**Horopaki**

**Context**

10. The first version of the Auckland Film Protocol (the Protocol) was adopted by the Regional Development and Operations Committee (resolution number RDO/2013/27) on 14 March 2013. A review of fees for filming in the Auckland Region was undertaken in 2014 and a new set of region-wide charges was recommended; providing a simplified and harmonised range of charges. The Governing Body adopted a region-wide schedule of film fees and revised Auckland Film Protocol on 28 May 2015 (resolution number GB/2015/36).
11. Since the Protocol was adopted in 2015 there have been a number of changes to legislation and to Auckland Council’s policy and planning framework. The purpose of the review of the Protocol was to:
   - ensure that the Protocol is up-to-date; and
   - identify emerging trends, issues or opportunities to be addressed in the Protocol.

12. Content of the Protocol was reviewed against legislation referenced in the document and against policies and plans of the Auckland Council group to identify areas where the Protocol should be updated. Engagement with staff involved in the process of assessing and approving film permit applications, from across the council group, was undertaken to inform the review and proposed amendments to the Protocol.

13. Workshops were held in September and October 2018 to engage with local boards that experience a high volume of filming.

14. Engagement to inform the preparation of the revised draft Protocol was also undertaken with:
   - mana whenua: mana whenua interests are represented by 19 iwi (tribal) authorities in Tāmaki Makaurau, Auckland. The 19 iwi authorities were invited, in writing, to inform the review of the Protocol.
   - staff of the Tūpuna Maunga o Tāmaki Makaurau Authority to inform the review.
   - screen sector: the screen sector was invited to participate in a survey in April 2019 to inform the review. The survey asked a series of general questions about the Protocol and experiences of filming in public open space in Auckland.
   - public: the People’s Panel in September 2018; a total of 4,762 responses were received. The survey asked a series of questions on views on and experiences of filming in Auckland.

A high-level summary of feedback (including local board feedback) is provided in Attachment C.

15. The review recommended that a range of changes be made to the Auckland Film Protocol, the following is a summary of the key changes proposed to the Environment and Community Committee:
   - Native species: include new content stating that Auckland Council may place additional conditions on film permits to protect native species
   - Kauri dieback: include new content providing information about kauri dieback and stating that filmmakers will be required to clean equipment to council specifications when filming in areas where kauri are present.
   - Drones: include new content stating that a film permit is required for commercial filming and requiring filmmakers to comply with Civil Aviation rules, Auckland Council bylaws and conditions.
   - Historic heritage: include new content stating that filming in proximity to historic (including cultural) heritage will be subject to conditions to protect these sites.
   - Health and safety: include new content to reflect the new Health and Safety at work Act 2015 and requirements to prepare a site specific health and safety plan.
   - Filming on Tūpuna Maunga: update content to reflect that applications to film on Tūpuna Maunga are assessed by the Tūpuna Maunga o Tāmaki Makaurau Authority.
   - Updates to content: update content to reflect current policy (e.g. smokefree policy), plans (Auckland Unitary Plan) and bylaws of Auckland Council.
   - Structural and editorial: amend some parts of the document to improve the logic, flow and readability of the document.
16. The revised draft of the Auckland Film Protocol was approved by the Envrionment and Community Committee for public consultation in June 2019 (resolution number ENV/2019/73).

**Tātaritanga me ngā tohutohu**

**Analysis and advice**

17. Consultation on the revised draft of the Auckland Film Protocol took place from 21 June to 12 July 2019. A total of 74 submissions were received; this represents a substantial increase on the 21 submission which were received in response to the 2015 review of the Auckland Film Protocol. Of the submissions received, 72 were submitted using the online form and 2 non-form hardcopy submissions were received.

18. Submitters were asked to identify if they worked in the screen sector or not, with:

- 29 submissions (39%) received from individuals or organisations that identified themselves as working in the screen sector
- 45 submissions (61%) received from individuals or organisations that do not work in the screen sector.

The questions included in the online form varied depending on whether the submitter identified themselves as working in the screen industry or not.

19. A breakdown of all submissions received by local board area is shown in Table 1 below. The small number of responses from individual local board areas means that an analysis of views by local board area was not possible for all local board areas.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Local Board Area</th>
<th>Number of respondents</th>
<th>Percentage of respondents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Waitākere Ranges</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>23.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Albert-Eden</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>12.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waitematā</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>10.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rodney</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>8.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper Harbour</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ōrākei</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maungakiekie-Tāmaki</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devonport-Takapuna</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Henderson-Massey</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaipātiki</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Howick</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whau</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Māngere-Ōtahuhu</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puketapapa</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hibiscus and Bays</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Papakura</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Franklin</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great Barrier</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ōtara-Papatoetoe</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A series of closed questions were asked of non-screen sector individuals and organisations; a summary of the responses to these questions is shown in Table 2 below. Table 2 shows that:

- most respondents are supportive of Auckland Council’s film-friendly approach and that;
- most respondents think that the Auckland Film Protocol does enough to manage the impact that filming has on residents and businesses, on public open space and historic and cultural heritage.

Table 2: Feedback on the Auckland Film Protocols management of the impacts of filming

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
<th>Percentage of regional submissions (number of respondents is shown in brackets)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do you support Auckland Council’s film-friendly approach?</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>75% (33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Partially</td>
<td>20% (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No</td>
<td>5% (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you think the Auckland Film Protocol does enough to manage the impact of filming on residents and businesses?</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>56% (18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Partially</td>
<td>19% (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No</td>
<td>25% (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you think the Auckland Film Protocol does enough to manage the impact that filming has on our public open space and environment?</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>53% (23)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Partially</td>
<td>33% (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No</td>
<td>14% (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you think the Auckland Film Protocol does enough to manage the impact of filming on our historic and cultural heritage?</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>62% (26)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Partially</td>
<td>29% (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No</td>
<td>10% (4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The main reasons given by those who supported Auckland Council’s film-friendly approach are shown in Table 3.

Table 3: Summary of key reasons for supporting Auckland Council’s film-friendly approach

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Theme</th>
<th>Summary of key submission points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Economic</td>
<td>• generates employment and economic growth;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• benefits communities and local businesses;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• benefits a broad range of trades and industries;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• attracts investment and businesses to Auckland.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 4 shows the key reasons that respondents gave for partially supporting Auckland Council’s film-friendly approach.

Table 4: Summary of key reasons given for partially supporting Auckland Council’s film-friendly approach.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Theme</th>
<th>Summary of key submission points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Access    | • the impacts on resident, including parking restrictions, road closures and ability to use public open space while filming is taking place need to be considered and managed;  
• need to ensure that film-makers are respectful of other users of public open space. |
| Notification | • there needs to be sufficient notification to ensure that residents and businesses are aware of open space being used for filming and are not inconvenienced. |
| Balance   | • need to consider and manage the impact that filming has on the environment and impacted residents;  
• need to balance the cumulative impacts of filming. |
| Equity    | • need to ensure that fees for commercial use of public places are fair. |

The key reasons given for not supporting Auckland Council’s film-friendly approach were:

• the cost to ratepayers of enabling filming;
• that there is not enough protection for individuals, businesses and residents affected by filming being carried out on private property.

A series of open-ended questions were also included to elicit further information about responses to these questions and about a range of other topics. Staff have worked through submissions to determine any changes to be recommended for the final revised Auckland Film Protocol. Attachment A identifies key themes and submission points along with proposed staff responses.

A summary of the most common submission themes and the proposed staff responses are shown in table 5.

Table 5: Summary of key submission themes and proposed staff responses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key themes</th>
<th>Summary of proposed responses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use of drones for filming</td>
<td>Include additional guidance on the use of drones around native birds and in proximity to other users of public open space and adjoining private properties.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impact on natural environment</td>
<td>Include stronger messaging about the importance of respecting Auckland’s natural environment, that film permits may be subject to conditions to manage impacts and/or that filming may be subject to restrictions where these impacts cannot be appropriately managed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kauri dieback</td>
<td>Amend to ensure that conditions may be placed on film permits in any public open space (controlled by Auckland Council) where kauri are present.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Impact on native species</strong></td>
<td>Include stronger messages around the potential impact of filming on native species, such as birds and that filming permits may be subject to conditions to manage impacts and/or that filming may be subject to restrictions where these impacts cannot be appropriately managed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Impact on access to public open space</strong></td>
<td>Include stronger messages around the need for filmmakers to be respectful of other users of public open space and state that film permits give limited permission to occupy public open space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Compliance and enforcement</strong></td>
<td>Include stronger messages around the requirement for filmmakers to comply with Auckland Council policies, plans, bylaws and the terms and conditions of their film permit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Health and safety</strong></td>
<td>Amend to enable production companies to arrange alternative timeframes for the submission of a site specific health and safety plan by agreement with Screen Auckland.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Notification</strong></td>
<td>Screen Auckland to consider operational approaches to achieving wider public notification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Impact on business</strong></td>
<td>No change to the Auckland Film Protocol. The protocol is intended to provide a framework that enables decisions to be made on a case-by-case basis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Equity</strong></td>
<td>No change to the Auckland Film Protocol. Fees for commercial use of public open space are set under the Auckland Council Trading and Events in Public Places Bylaw 2015 and amended through the long term plan and annual plan.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

25. This report seeks formal feedback from the board at its August 2019 business meeting on the recommended changes to the revised draft Auckland Film Protocol in response to consultation feedback.

Ngā whakaaweawe me ngā tirohanga a te rōpū Kaunihera
Council group impacts and views

26. Engagement with staff involved in the process of assessing and approving film permit applications, from across the council group, was undertaken to inform the review and proposed amendments to the Protocol. This included engagement with Auckland Transport, Panuku Development Auckland, and with Auckland Council community facilities, region-wide planning, social policy and bylaws, visitor experience and heritage.

Ngā whakaaweawe ā-rohe me ngā tirohanga a te poari ā-rohe
Local impacts and local board views

Role of local boards in film permitting

27. Landowner approval is required to film on any public open space in the Auckland region. Local boards are responsible for landowner approvals for local parks and reserves. Engagement with local boards that experience a high volume of applications for film permits was undertaken in September and October 2018 to inform the review of the Auckland Film Protocol. A summary of the key engagement themes is included in Attachment C and was reported to the Environment and Community Committee in July 2019.

28. A key theme from local board engagement was that the film permit timeframes mean that landowner approval timeframes are very tight, particularly when considering complex or contentious applications. It was also noted that the current timeframes do not allow sufficient time to consider applications at full board meetings or to consult key stakeholders. Given this, the following options on film permit timeframes were presented to the Environment and Community Committee at a workshop in May 2019 and at the June 2019 meeting.
Item 19

Option one: Status Quo
Option two: amend the permit timeframes
  • Option 2(a) the permit time frame is amended to be “up to five working days”.
  • Option 2(b) the permit time frame is increased to 5-7 working days.

29. Following direction from the Environment and Community Committee, that increasing timeframes could act as a disincentive making Auckland internationally uncompetitive, the status quo option was retained in the draft Auckland Film Protocol.

Tauākī whakaaweawe Māori
Māori impact statement

30. Auckland Tourism, Events and Economic Development (ATEED) has an ongoing relationship with several mana whenua and mataawaka groups, across its whole portfolio of activity. To inform the review of the Protocol the 19 iwi authorities were invited, in writing, to inform the review. In relation to film permit applications Māori views and input may be obtained in several ways where there is a potential impact on particular land or sites. This is usually coordinated either by the film facilitator, or through the relevant parks manager.

31. Specific processes are in place for the tūpuna maunga, with all commercial filming on the maunga requiring the approval of the Tūpuna Maunga o Tāmaki Makaurau Authority (Tūpuna Maunga Authority). Screen Auckland facilitates all requests for approval to film on the tūpuna maunga. Approval to film will be subject to conditions and restrictions set by the Tūpuna Maunga Authority. Meetings were held with staff of the Tūpuna Maunga Authority to inform the review and ensure that proposed amendments are consistent with the policy of the Tūpuna Maunga Authority.

Ngā ritenga ā-pūtea
Financial implications

32. The proposed amendments to the Protocol do not impact on existing levels of service and will not impact on operational budgets.

Ngā raru tūpono me ngā whakamaurutanga
Risks and mitigations

33. There are no significant risks arising from the local board giving feedback on the proposed changes to the revised draft Auckland Film Protocol at this time.

34. If adoption of the revised Auckland Film Protocol is delayed this would impact on council’s ability to implement the proposed changes.

Ngā koringa ā-muri
Next steps

35. Public feedback and proposed amendments to the Auckland Film Protocol will be presented to the Environment and Community Committee for approval.

Ngā tāpirihanga
Attachments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Key submission themes and responses</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Draft 2019 Auckland Film Protocol</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Summary of preconsultation engagement</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Ngā kaihaina

**Signatories**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Marie Jenkins, Screen Facilitation Manager, ATEED</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Authorisers           | Victoria Villaraza - Acting General Manager, Local Bboard Services  
                        | Glenn Boyd - Relationship Manager Henderson-Massey, Waitakere Ranges,  
                        | Whau                                           |
### Attachment A: Key submission themes and recommended amendments to the draft Auckland Film Protocol based on consultation feedback

Staff are working through the detailed submissions received to determine and recommend changes to the draft Auckland Film Protocol. Table 1 shows key submission themes where change to the Auckland Film Protocol was suggested. For each key submission point a proposed staff response and recommended amendments to the Auckland Film Protocol are shown. Table 2 shows minor changes suggested to the Auckland Film Protocol by submitters where staff recommend that these changes be made for clarity. Table 3 shows a summary of themes where submissions indicated a broad level of support for the inclusion of these topics in the Auckland Film Protocol.

All recommended amendments to the Auckland Film protocol are shown in track changes in Attachment B.

#### Table 1: Key submission themes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Theme</th>
<th>Summary of key submission points</th>
<th>Proposed staff response</th>
<th>Recommended amendments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use of drones</td>
<td>Drones can be harmful to native birds, disrupting nesting and feeding. The potential negative effects, particularly on endangered native species needs to be prevented. Need to consider restricting or prohibiting filming in some locations at some times of the year.</td>
<td>The use of drones is regulated by the Civil Aviation Authority. Auckland Council as a landowner has put in place a Code of Conduct to regulate the use of drones in public open space. The draft Auckland Film Protocol included a new section on the use of drones for commercial filming and requires film makers to apply for a permit to film and to comply with the Auckland Council Code of Conduct and bylaws. As the use of drones for both commercial and recreational purposes has increased concerns about drone may be the result of both recreational and commercial use and the Protocol only manages use for the purpose of commercial filming. The Auckland Council Code of Conduct does restrict the use of drones around birds, to some extent; however, this was not restated in the draft Protocol. It is recommended that a summary of key provisions from the Code of Conduct is included in Section 4.3.11 of the draft Protocol. It is also recommended that Section 3.4.11 be amended to note that filming in some locations may be restricted or subject to additional conditions to avoid harm to native birds and to include additional guidance on drone use where native birds are present at a film location and reference to the protection of native species under the Wildlife Act 1953.</td>
<td>Amend Sections 2.3, 4.3.11 and Key New Zealand Legislation section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Drones can spook livestock and horses; in some areas where horse riding is a common</td>
<td>The Auckland Council Code of does restrict drone use in proximity to livestock; however, this was not restated in the draft Protocol.</td>
<td>Amend section 4.3.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theme</td>
<td>Summary of key submission points</td>
<td>Proposed staff response</td>
<td>Recommended amendments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>activity this can result in safety risks for the horse and rider. The impact of drones on livestock and horse riders needs to be managed.</td>
<td>It is recommended that a summary of key provisions from the Code of Conduct is included in Section 4.3.11 of the draft Protocol.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Drones can cause concerns for other users and neighbours of public open space. Need to ensure that drone use does not impinge on the privacy of other users and neighbours and that it does not overly impact on other users’ enjoyment of public places.</td>
<td>The Auckland Council Code of does restrict drone use in proximity to other users of parks and over adjoining private properties; however, this was not restated in the draft Protocol.</td>
<td>Amend section 4.3.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Screen sector submitters generally supported the need to permit and regulate the use of drones for commercial filming in public open space. Some submitters noted that other commercial uses of drones should also be regulated as it can result in negative public perceptions of drone use.</td>
<td>When a drone is being used for commercial filming purposes over public open space Auckland Council requires drone users to apply for a permit to film. This requirement is stated in the draft Auckland Film Protocol. Regulating the use of drones for other commercial purposes is out of the scope of the Auckland Film Protocol.</td>
<td>No change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Overall most submitters agreed that it was important to ensure that the impact of filming on Auckland’s natural environment is managed and most public submitters felt that the Protocol does enough to manage the impact that filming on the environment. However, some submitters felt that the Protocol should contain stronger messaging around the importance of respecting and protecting the natural environment.</td>
<td>The Auckland Film Protocol includes a number of sections which refer to managing the impact of filming on natural environments. To address submitter concerns it is recommended that section 3.9 be amended to include: • stronger messaging about the importance of respecting and protecting Auckland’s natural environment • clarify that film permits may be subject to conditions to manage effects of a film proposal and filming in some locations may be restricted or prohibited where the effects of a film proposal cannot be appropriately managed</td>
<td>Amend Section 3.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>There is a need to consider the environment impact of filming when assessing permit applications, including the potential impact of special effects on the natural environment.</td>
<td>Assessing the potential impact of filming on a particular natural environment or location requires the consideration of a range of factors, including but not limited to consideration of the nature of the film proposal and scope and scale of filming activity. While one film proposal may be able to appropriately manage the potential impacts on a particular location, another may not be able</td>
<td>Add a new section to Table One and amend section 4.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theme</td>
<td>Summary of key submission points</td>
<td>Proposed staff response</td>
<td>Recommended amendments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It is important to manage the potential impact of vehicles on beaches and in coastal areas. Filming should avoid the use of vehicles if possible or use only the minimum number necessary.</td>
<td>to appropriately manage the potential impacts on that same location. To recognise that the impact of a film proposal is assessed but varies dependent on a range of factors, it is recommended that: • a new section be added to Table One noting that assessment of environmental impacts takes into account a range of factors; • section 4.10 is amended to note that where special effects are planned the impact on the natural environment and wildlife will be considered and the use of special effects may be subject to conditions and / or restrictions.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kauri dieback</td>
<td>Most submitters agreed that it was very important to protect kauri and supported the inclusion of requirements in the draft Protocol. However, it was suggested that the Protocol needs to ensure that these requirements apply to all public open space.</td>
<td>Auckland Council regulates vehicles on beaches in the Auckland Council Public Safety and Nuisance Bylaw and Council must also give effect to Policy 20(1) of the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement. This is reflected in section 4.3.6 of the Auckland Film Protocol. To reinforce existing provisions on the use of vehicles on beaches it is recommended that section 4.3.6 is amended to state that vehicle use should where ever possible be avoided of kept to the minimum necessary.</td>
<td>Amend Section 4.3.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impact on native species</td>
<td>Most submitters supported the addition of section 3.12 and noted that it is very important to protect native species. However it was noted that the section largely focuses on biosecurity and suggested that the Protocol should contain more emphasis on protecting native flora and fauna, in particular native birds from the potential impact of filming</td>
<td>The impact of filming on native flora and fauna is considered in a number of sections of the Auckland Film Protocol. To address submitter concerns it is recommended that section 3.12 be amended to note that the impact of filming on native flora and fauna will be assessed and filming may be subject to conditions and / or restrictions to protect native flora and fauna. Noise and lighting can have a negative impact on native birds. It is recommended that section 3.1.5 be amended to note that in some</td>
<td>Amend Sections 3.1.5 and 3.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theme</td>
<td>Summary of key submission points</td>
<td>Proposed staff response</td>
<td>Recommended amendments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impact on access to public open space</td>
<td>Overall most submitters felt that the Auckland Film Protocol does enough to manage the impact that filming on public open space. Some submitters noted that while some areas of an open space might be in use for filming there was generally still plenty of space for other users. However, some submitters felt that filming had resulted in significant inconvenience due to restricted access to public spaces such as footpaths, local roads, parks, reserves and beaches.</td>
<td>Under the terms and conditions of a film permit film makers are provided with limited permission to occupy public open space. This means that the public are still able to access public open space, although access to some areas may be restricted for a period of time to avoid interruptions to filming and ensure public health and safety. This condition is not explicitly restated in the Auckland Film Protocol. The draft Protocol requires film makers to ensure (Section 3.1.3), unless expressly permitted, continued public pedestrian access. In addition, film permit terms and conditions require that film makers ensure access for residents, businesses and emergency vehicles are available at all times, that the public is not unduly inconvenienced and that public and private access ways are clear at all times. All part or full road closures, for the purpose of filming, are undertaken in accordance with the requirements of the Local Government Act 1974 and are publicly notified. For avoidance of doubt, it is recommended that sections 2.1 and 3.1 are amended to state that a film permit gives production companies limited permission to occupy and use public open space.</td>
<td>Amend sections 2.1 and 3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification</td>
<td>Notification of local residents. Some submitters noted that they or other residents have been inconvenienced due to filming in their local area. Noting that filming may for example, restrict access to parking, footpaths,</td>
<td>Section 3.1.8 sets out minimum requirements for the notification of residents and businesses in the area impacted by filming, including in relation to road closures. Road closures (including closures of footpaths) for the filming are undertaken in accordance with the requirements of the Local Government Act 1974 and must be notified in printed news media.</td>
<td>Amend section 3.1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theme</td>
<td>Summary of key submission points</td>
<td>Proposed staff response</td>
<td>Recommended amendments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and some parts of a local park or to local roads. In contrast some submitters noted that they experienced filming in their local area and felt that they were well informed.</td>
<td>In addition to this Auckland Transport publishes information about road closures on its website. It is recommended that section 3.1B be amended to reference requirements for public notification by print media and that further information about road closures is available on Auckland Transport’s website.</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Wider notification of filming should occur to enable:  
- Avoidance of areas where filming is taking place. Some submitters noted that residents travel some distance to access public open space for recreational purposes and can be inconvenienced if filming is occurring.  
- Interested residents of Auckland to watch filming on location. Some submitters noted that they would like to know where filming is occurring so that they have an opportunity to see filming on location. | Notification requirements in the Protocol focus on informing residents and business in the area impacted by filming. Wider notification of filming could reduce the risk of inconvenience to residents who may intend to use public open space but effective notification would be complicated by a range of operational factors including:  
- the date and / or timing of location filming is subject to change at short notice, as a result of weather and other considerations, and if notifications were not up-to-date it may not effectively inform potential users;  
- it would be difficult to put in place a single notification platform or media that would reach all potential users of public open space.  
Putting in place mechanisms for wider notification does not require an amendment to the Auckland Film Protocol and it is recommended that Screen Auckland consider potential operational approaches to achieving wider notification. | No change Screen Auckland to consider operational approaches to achieving wider notification. | |
| Compliance and enforcement | Many submitters noted that while for the most part film makers act responsibly some do not and there needs to be:  
- a stronger emphasis on compliance in the Protocol;  
- a stronger focus on enforcement when production companies do not comply with their film permit, rules, regulations or policy of Auckland Council. There should be consequences and / or disincentives for those who do not comply. | The Auckland Film Protocol states in a number of places that film makers are required to comply with Auckland Council policies, plans, bylaws and the terms and conditions of their film permit and that non-compliance may result in enforcement. Enforcement is limited to the powers available to Auckland Council under legislation such as the Local Government Act and the Resource Management Act to enforce breaches of bylaws and policies and plans like the Auckland Unitary Plan. To address submitters concerns it is recommended that sections 3.2 and 3.3 be amended to increase emphasis on compliance. | Amend Sections 3.2 and 3.3 |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Theme</th>
<th>Summary of key submission points</th>
<th>Proposed staff response</th>
<th>Recommended amendments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Health and safety</td>
<td>Most submitters generally agreed that health and safety, for screen sector workers and members of the public, is important and supported the addition of section 4.6. However some screen sector submitters noted that it is challenging to meet the timeframes specified for submitting a site specific health and safety plan.</td>
<td>Health and Safety in New Zealand workplaces is regulated by the Health and Safety at work Act 2015. Section 4.6 was added to draft Auckland Film Protocol to recognise Auckland Councils obligations under the Act when filming is occurring in public open space. It is recommended that section 4.6.1 be amended to enable production companies to arrange an alternative timeframe for the submission of a site specific health and safety plan under some circumstances. It is also recommended that this section be amended to require production companies to provide general crew safety notes which typically specify general health and safety provisions in place for all crew regardless of location.</td>
<td>Amend section 4.6.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Impact on business     | Overall most submitters felt that the Auckland Film Protocol does enough to manage the impact on businesses who are in areas where filming is taking place. However, some screen sector submitters noted:  
  - that the permitting process can seem overly bureaucratic and conditions and restrictions placed on filming in some locations can have a negative impact on businesses working with the screen sector  
  - the addition of new requirements and conditions was resulting in increased red tape.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | The Protocol is intended to create a framework that enables decisions to be made on a case-by-case basis. This will mean that sometimes conditions or restrictions are required to balance potential impacts of filming in a particular location.                                                                                                           | No change               |
| Equity                 | The use of public open space needs to consider the cost of providing public open space to ratepayers and ensure that the rates for commercial use of open space are fair and equitable.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Fees for commercial use of public open space including commercial and organised filming are set under the Auckland Council Trading and Events in Public Places 2015 bylaw and are amended through the long term plan and annual plan process.                                                                                                             | No change               |
Table 2: Minor changes to the Protocol in response to submitter feedback.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Themes</th>
<th>Submitter suggestion</th>
<th>Proposed staff response</th>
<th>Recommended amendments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Waitākere Ranges Heritage Areas Act</td>
<td>The draft Protocol made a small number of references to the Waitākere Ranges Heritage Areas Act. It was suggested that the Act needs to be referenced in a number of other parts of the document and that more information about the objectives of the Act should be included.</td>
<td>The Waitākere Ranges Heritage Areas Act recognises the national, regional and local significance of the Waitākere Ranges area. It is recommended that sections 2.1 and 4.2 are amended to refer to the Waitākere Ranges Heritage Areas Act and that the Key Legislation section is amended to include reference to the objectives of the Act.</td>
<td>Amend sections 2.1, 4.2 and Key New Zealand Legislation section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screen Auckland Reserved Parking document</td>
<td>Section 4.2.1 refers to the Screen Auckland Reserved Parking (SARP) document. It was suggested that this should be defined in the document.</td>
<td>The Auckland Film Protocol refers to the Screen Auckland Reserved Parking Document which outlines operational requirements when reserving parking areas for film activities. It is recommended that a definition be added to the glossary to state this.</td>
<td>Amend glossary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recces</td>
<td>Recces are undertaken to assess the suitability of locations for filming. It was suggested that the Protocol could be clearer that any filming activity undertaken during a recces must be low impact in nature.</td>
<td>Recces are undertaken by screen production companies before a film permit has been granted to assess the suitability of a location for filming. It is recommended that section 2.3 is amended to include a new frequently asked question which clarifies that any recces undertaken must be low impact and production companies must comply with the requirements of the Auckland Film Protocol during recces.</td>
<td>Amend Section 2.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 3: Summary of key support for topics.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Submitter views</th>
<th>Recommended response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Impact on cultural heritage</td>
<td>Overall most submitters felt that the Auckland Film Protocol does enough to manage the impact that filming has on cultural heritage. Most submitters noted that it was important to ensure cultural heritage sites are treated with respect.</td>
<td>No change required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filming on the water</td>
<td>Most submitters supported the addition of section 4.3.7, noting that health and safety considerations on the water are important. Note all those who commented on this matter were individuals or organisations working in the screen sector.</td>
<td>No change required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waste and sustainability</td>
<td>Most submitters, including those submitters who work in the screen sector, agreed that it was important to minimise and manage waste to landfill and agreed that it was important for the screen sector to play their part. Many of the screen sector submitters noted that they feel practice in this area is improving and agreed that it should continue to be a focus.</td>
<td>No change required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core Commitments</td>
<td>Most submitters were supportive of the streamlined Core Commitments section, although some submitters noted that it was important to ensure that the process of film permitting is also streamlined.</td>
<td>No change required</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Ngā Tikanga Hopu Whakaahua i te Rohe o Tāmaki Makaurau

Auckland Film Protocol

Commitments, conditions and guidelines for filming in the Auckland Region
# Table of Contents

Table of Contents ................................................................................................................. 3  
Introduction ......................................................................................................................... 1  
Objectives ............................................................................................................................ 2  
Structure of this document ..................................................................................................... 3  
Section One: Core commitments ......................................................................................... 4  
Section Two: A quick reference guide to filming in Auckland ............................................. 6  
   2.1 Obtaining consent to film ............................................................................................. 6  
   2.2 Flowchart summarising the filming application process ........................................... 8  
   2.3 Frequently Asked Questions ....................................................................................... 9  
   2.4 Filming impacts and Auckland Council requirements ............................................. 13  
   2.5 Filming fees and associated costs ............................................................................ 15  
Section Three: Screen Industry Code of Conduct ............................................................ 16  
   3.1 Standard conditions for filming activity in the Auckland Region ............................... 16  
   3.2 Compliance with relevant plans, policies, bylaws, and rules ................................. 20  
   3.3 Compliance with the Auckland Film Protocol and film permit conditions ............. 21  
   3.4 Filming potentially offensive material ...................................................................... 21  
   3.5 Filming on private premises ..................................................................................... 21  
   3.6 Using local businesses .............................................................................................. 22  
   3.7 Smokefree Areas ..................................................................................................... 22  
   3.8 Filming in sensitive areas and the management of cumulative effects ................... 22  
   3.9 Protecting natural environments ............................................................................ 22  
   3.10 Environmental sustainability ............................................................................... 23  
   3.11 Protecting Auckland’s historic heritage ................................................................ 24  
   3.12 Protecting our native species ................................................................................ 24  
   3.13 Going the extra mile ............................................................................................. 24  
   3.14 Insurance requirements ......................................................................................... 25  
   3.15 Concerns about filming ......................................................................................... 25  
Section Four: The approval process in detail ..................................................................... 26  
   4.1 Traffic management ............................................................................................... 26  
   4.2 Parking essential vehicles ...................................................................................... 28
Introduction

What Auckland offers
Auckland is now recognised as a world-class screen production destination, providing access to first-rate skills and talent, stunning locations, and exceptional production facilities.

The Auckland screen production industry caters for a wide range of activities, including feature films, television series, documentaries, commercials, photoshoots, animation, post production and visual effects.

How Auckland benefits
The economic importance of the film industry in Auckland has been growing steadily, bringing jobs and opportunity to those directly involved in the industry and positive impacts for the wider economy. This in turn leads to better social outcomes and improved quality of life for all Aucklanders.

Auckland’s growing film industry supports our aspiration, outlined in the Auckland Plan 2050, for Auckland to be prosperous, with many opportunities, delivering better social and economic outcomes for everyone. The Auckland Plan recognises that our economy needs to be innovative and agile and that international connectivity is key to our economic success.

Many jobs in the screen industry, particularly in the post-production sector are high-tech with innovation key to success. Television programmes, feature films and television commercials produced in Auckland are enjoyed by audiences all over the world. Showcasing Auckland to the world, enhancing our reputation, our sense of pride in who we are, encouraging visitors and attracting skills and talent to Auckland.

Being ‘film-friendly’ while balancing the impact on residents and businesses
Many filming projects, particularly television commercials and some television programmes, operate under tight timeframes and require quick decision-making.
Cities that are able to process requests quickly are more attractive to screen production companies, who may only have a very limited amount of time to turn a script into a finished product.

However, filming is a highly controlled activity that relies on the use of public space and there is a need to ensure that local residents, and businesses, and the environment are not overly negatively impacted by filming.

**Objectives**

The overall objective of this document is to:

1. create a film-friendly culture within Auckland Council, Council Controlled Organisations (CCOs) and the Auckland Region in order to attract and retain screen production industry business.

Key to this objective being realised is a two way commitment from the wider council organisation\(^1\) and filmmakers to open minded and thorough communication with each other, and an awareness of the needs of local residents and businesses. With this in mind, the other objectives of this document are to:

2. deliver a cohesive, efficient and customer driven service that provides certainty to filmmakers in a globally competitive market.

3. enable public goodwill towards the film industry by making explicit the required conduct of film crews when filming in public spaces, or anywhere that members of the public, local businesses, iwi or the environment are likely to be impacted on.

Screen Auckland is the film office for the Auckland Region and is responsible for the permitting of filming on public open space in the Auckland Region. To enable the achievement of these objectives - contributing to an Auckland which is prosperous with many opportunities and to a sustainable screen industry - Screen Auckland’s strategic priorities are set out in the diagram below.

---

\(^1\) The term "wider council organisation" refers to Auckland Council and all Council Controlled Organisations and subsidiary companies.
Structure of this document

This document is structured into four distinct parts.

**Section one** - outlines commitments made by Auckland Council and members of the wider council organisation on how they will support the work of the film industry.

**Section two** - provides a quick reference guide for filmmakers on processes and costs related to filming in Auckland.

**Section three** - outlines a code of conduct for filmmakers when filming on public space, or anywhere where members of the public or local businesses are likely to be impacted on. The code of conduct consists of rules filmmakers must abide by when undertaking filming in Auckland, and also provides suggestions on how production companies can go the extra mile when working with local communities.

**Section four** - provides further detail on the approval processes associated with filming as they relate to the different functions of the wider council organisation.

**Attention film makers**

This document is designed for filmmakers considering filming in Auckland. It signifies Council’s commitment to the screen production industry, and outlines what filmmakers can expect, and what is expected of them, when filming in, on or around public places in Auckland.

Other parties who may find this document of interest include:

- elected members of the governing body and local boards;
- staff within the wider council organisation who are unfamiliar with Auckland’s film friendly commitments, protocols and guidelines;
- residents, businesses or community organisations who would like information on best practice and filming processes in Auckland or are impacted on by filming;
- Mana Whenua;
- other local authorities or film offices.
1 Section One: Core commitments

Our commitment to the screen industry

1.1 Auckland Council and members of the wider council organisation will say yes to the screen production industry unless there are good reasons not to.

1.2 In instances where there are difficulties with a proposed shoot, Auckland Council will listen to and consider all possibilities for mitigation put forward by the screen production industry and others.

1.3 In instances where it is not possible to say yes, this decision will be made promptly and transparently, and Screen Auckland along with relevant members of the wider council organisation will work with the screen production industry to identify alternative options.

1.4 Screen Auckland, with support from relevant officers within the wider council organisation, will make it as easy as possible for the screen production industry to submit a thorough and complete application form. This will reduce the likelihood of delays due to the need to obtain more information later in the process, and unanticipated complications with the filming activity.

1.5 Screen Auckland’s objective is to deliver a customer-driven and efficient service to the screen industry. To achieve this Screen Auckland will constantly seek to identify opportunities to improve the service given to the screen industry, and will work with members of the wider council organisation to achieve this.

Our commitment to Auckland

1.6 Screen Auckland will consider the potential positive and negative impacts of filming on Auckland’s communities and environment and the needs of all impacted communities, partners and stakeholders when facilitating filming applications.

1.7 Screen Auckland, with support from relevant officers within the wider council organisation and local boards, will work with the screen production industry on an ongoing basis to mitigate any negative effects caused by filming and capitalise on opportunities for filming to contribute to Auckland’s social, economic and environmental outcomes.

1.8 Auckland Council and members of the wider council organisation have a cooperative partnership with mana whenua and ensure the screen production industry will follow cultural practices in areas of cultural significance, and protect and use sensitive information as communicated.
Our commitment to fostering collaborative working relationships

1.9 Successful filmmaking and realising the potential benefits of filming for Auckland requires effective collaboration - between the screen industry, Auckland Council and members of the wider council organisation, the local community, local businesses, and stakeholders. Screen Auckland undertakes to:

- foster cooperative and collaborative relationships between all parties;
- build awareness and foster mutual understanding between the respective parties.

Our expectations of the screen industry

1.10 Auckland Council’s support of the screen production industry is based on the expectation that:

- Screen Auckland have received all relevant information concerning proposed shoots;
- the screen industry will maintain their side of the relationship by filming responsibly, within the limits of their film permit, and pursuant to this document.

Should a production company fail to do so, the film permit will become null and void in relation to that particular film shoot.
2 Section Two: A quick reference guide to filming in Auckland

The purpose of this section is to provide filmmakers with a quick overview of the processes and costs associated with filming in public spaces in the Auckland Region. Further detail relating to potential approval requirements can be found in Section Four of this document.

2.1 Obtaining consent to film
If you are filming in, on, or around public open space, public transport or roads you:

- are likely to need a film permit and / or a parking permit;
- will need a copy of the Auckland Film Protocol, and;
- need to be aware of your requirements as outlined in the Auckland Film Protocol.

A film permit gives production companies limited permission to occupy and use public open space and must ensure that the public are not overly inconvenienced.

Screen Auckland should be the first port of call for production companies seeking to film in Auckland. They act as a one stop shop for all filming enquiries, by seeking the necessary approvals on your behalf and acting as a “go between” for production companies and the required authorities. Screen Auckland will work to make sure that the film permit application process is as streamlined as possible.

Film permits are issued pursuant to Auckland’s plans, policies and bylaws and pending approval of relevant owners, managers and / or leaseholders of the proposed location such as Auckland Council, council controlled organisations and iwi. For example, all filming activities within the road corridor or public transport facilities require formal approval from Auckland Transport, a council controlled organisation of Auckland Council. In some areas there are other plans and rules in place that need to be considered. In the Wātakere Ranges Heritage Area, the Wātakere Ranges Heritage Area Act 2008 (WRHAA) will need to be taken into account when planning for and undertaking filming.

If you are filming on private property, you may still require parking permits for vehicles on the street or have other regulatory requirements that need to be met. The combination of the planned filming and the proposed location will determine what approvals are needed and the time it will take to obtain these.

Auckland’s volcanic cones (tūpuna maunga) come under the administration of the Tūpuna Maunga Authority o Tāmaki Makaurau Authority (Tūpuna Maunga Authority). The Authority is independent of Auckland Council. A permit is required for any filming or commercial still photography on the maunga regardless of its nature or scale.

To ensure there is sufficient time for your application to film to be assessed by the Tūpuna Maunga Authority, contact Screen Auckland to discuss your project.
Screen Auckland provides the following facilitation services:

- issues film permits on behalf of Auckland Council once necessary approvals have been received;
- a coordinating role by acting on behalf of production companies to gain the necessary approvals and/or information from relevant members of the wider council organisation (including local boards) and impacted stakeholders;
- information and assistance relating to filming in Auckland;
- booking of locations and outdoor venues;
- quick turnaround for approvals;
- an advocacy service for the screen production industry;
- contacts and liaison with a range of services.

Before submitting an application, call the Screen Auckland film facilitation team to discuss your plans, our contact details can be found at www.aucklandnz.com/film. For larger or more complex shoots, it is often useful to have a pre-application meeting, early on in the process, to assess timeframes, likely regulatory requirements and the early identification of any potential problems.
2.2 Flowchart summarising the filming application process

1. Initial Enquiry
- Contact Screen Auckland – a Film Facilitator (FF) will assess the feasibility based on possible locations, dates and description of action.
- During pre-production or early feasibility stages, large or complex productions should arrange a meeting with Screen Auckland to discuss requirements.
- FF liaises with relevant council officers and authorities and advises of any known or foreseeable concerns.

2. Application
- A location manager or other relevant production staff applies to Screen Auckland for a permit to film and is required to complete an application form which can be found at www.aucklandnz.com/screen.
- Once the application form is completed and submitted along with the required supporting documentation, a FF acknowledges receipt of application within one working day and provides an early estimate of timeframes.
- FF to advise if any site or planning meetings need to take place prior to a decision being made.

3. Processing Applications
- FF issues the Initial Activity Proposal document, summarising the information supplied by the filmmaker to the appropriate council departments, local boards and external stakeholders for consideration.
- Relevant authorities and interested parties provide feedback / comments to FF.
- FF gives a cost estimate of additional services to the filmmakers and advises if a bond is required.
- FF liaises with filmmakers if it is envisaged that conditions need to be imposed on the film permit or amendments made to filming proposal.
- FF to advise filmmaker of outcome as soon as possible to allow time for mitigation or possible changes to proposed filming.

4. Issuing Permits
- FF advises filmmaker of approval as soon as possible and will supply written confirmation via email.
- Permit contains terms and conditions of approval such as filming dates and activities, approved parking arrangement and traffic management plans, and consultation requirements.

5. Shoot Day and Debrief
- The FF or council officers may undertake a site inspection.
- Location manager or production manager to have a copy of the permit to film and Auckland Film Protocol on site.
- Production to report a debrief of the shoot, including public reaction or if any damage of the location has occurred.
- The filmmaker, in consultation with FF, performs site remediation if required.
- If a portion of the bond is to be retained to repair damage the FF must advise the filmmakers of the reasons.
- If a bond was supplied and there is no damage, the FF must refund the bond.
2.3 Frequently Asked Questions

How do I get a permit to film?

You can find an application for a permit to film on the Screen Auckland website, www.aucklandnz.com/screen, or you can contact the Screen Auckland office to speak to a film facilitator first. You can also find a copy of the film permit application in Appendix one.

How long does it take to receive a permit?

Many film shoots can receive a permit within 3-5 working days from receipt of a complete application, depending on the impact and sensitivity of the location. Major impact filming can take significantly longer and so can getting permission to film in sensitive places or areas of public space that are run privately or through trusts.

Why are the time frames for filming so short?

Filming activities are often fast turnaround from concept to delivery. To keep filming in Auckland, in a competitive international market, film crews often have to work within short timeframes.

For very high impact shoots, such as those that require resource consents or road closures, timeframes are necessarily impacted on due to regulatory requirements. These are discussed in more detail in section 4 of this document.

What is public open space?

Any road, footpath, public square, grass verge, berm, public garden, reserve, park, beach, wharf, breakwater, ramp or pontoon, foreshore, dunes, access way, recreational ground or sports field that is owned or operated by Auckland Council.

What is Screen Auckland?

Screen Auckland is part of Auckland Tourism Events and Economic Development Limited (ATEED), which is a (Council Controlled Organisation) CCO of Auckland Council. Screen Auckland have delegated authority to issue permits to film on public open spaces throughout the Auckland Region once necessary approvals have been gained from relevant owners, managers and / or leaseholders of the proposed location. Screen Auckland is also an advocate for filming in Auckland and promotes the region as a filming location to the international market.

If I’m filming on private property do I need to tell Screen Auckland?

Yes we want to hear from you. As an advocate for the local film industry we need to ensure that impacts on communities are managed appropriately, and we can also let you know of other activity in the area that may affect your shoot; see section 3.5 for more information. Please note, if you require parking for technical vehicles a parking permit may be required.
Do the standard conditions for filming in Auckland apply to me if my shoot is low impact and doesn’t require a film permit?

Yes, if you are filming in public open space you must comply with the standard conditions for filming in Auckland, even if your shoot is low impact and does not need a permit or has been granted a fee discount or waiver. These conditions help to limit inconvenience to neighbouring businesses and residents; helping to ensure the sustainability of filming in public spaces. See section 3, Screen Industry Code of Conduct, for more information.

I’m undertaking a recce, does the Auckland Film Protocol apply to me?

If you are undertaking a recce to assess the suitability of a location you must ensure that any activity associated with the recce is low impact. You must also ensure that you comply with Section three: Screen Industry Code of Conduct of the Auckland Film Protocol.

I’m planning a shoot for a school or university project, do I need to contact Screen Auckland?

Yes, if you are planning to film in a public place it’s always best to give us a call beforehand to double check. If your equipment is hand-held only, the crew is small (fewer than nine) and you won’t impede public access, at many locations you may not need a film permit. You will still need to comply with the Screen Industry Code of Conduct; see section 3 for more information.

What happens if I film without a permit or are in breach of permit conditions?

Filming in public places in Auckland is controlled under the Auckland Council Trading and Events in Public Places Bylaw. The size, impact and location of your shoot determines whether you need a permit to film, as set out in section 2.4 of this document. If a production is filming without a permit when it should have one, or is in breach of its permit, the shoot will be shut down and the production could be blacklisted from future filming in public spaces. The production could be charged a location fee after the shoot takes place, and may not be covered by any insurance that they have. In some cases Auckland Council may also use its powers under the Local Government Act 2002 to seize equipment or fine production companies for breaching permits, for more information see section 3.2 of this document.

If you are planning to film in a public place, contact Screen Auckland to discuss whether you require a permit.

When do I need a traffic management plan for filming?

A traffic management plan (TMP) is needed for any activity that inhibits the regular flow of traffic or involves filming within the road reserve. Your TMP must be drawn up by a certified traffic management company and approved by the Road Controlling Authority. Filming on footpaths and berms does not always need a TMP, this will depend on how filming impacts on safety and public access. Contact Screen Auckland for advice. If you are filming with a vehicle or wish to rig equipment to a
vehicle speak to a film facilitator who will be able to advise you of the best way to manage your shoot safely.

Why do I have to engage in consultation?
Filming can impact the day to day activities of businesses and residents and because public open space is for everyone, we need to ensure that you have properly informed those who may be affected.

It is in the interests of all parties that businesses and residents are treated with respect in order to ensure that filming in public spaces is sustainable for future shoots.

What if my shoot involves animals?
Production companies wishing to film animals in public places must comply with the Animal Management Act 1999 and need to be aware of the:

- Dog Management Bylaw which sets out rules around dogs in public places. For example, filming a dog off leash in some areas will require special permission or a temporary change to the bylaw, which can take time.
- Animal Management Bylaw which sets out rules around other animals in public place.

More information on bylaws can be found in section 3.3 of this document or on Auckland Council’s website².

How do I pay for my filming?
You will receive an invoice which can be paid via bank transfer. You will be notified if payment is to be made elsewhere.

How do I get a fee reduction?
Fees are assessed on a case-by-case basis. Talk to your film facilitator if your project is not-for-profit, or if it is charity or community based.

Can I remove street furniture for my shoot?
The removal of street furniture, including signs and the adjustment of street lighting, is permissible on a case-by-case basis. Any arrangement for this work must be made through Screen Auckland and all costs, including damage or reinstatement costs, have to be met by the production company.

How come someone else filmed here and I can’t?
Shoots are assessed on a case-by-case basis and Auckland is a living, breathing, changing environment. Many factors come into play when assessing feasibility of a location; these include impact, time of day, day of week, frequency of other activities in the area, civil works or other filming activity already taking place in the area.

What if my shoot involves stunts, firearms or special effects?
You are likely to be subject to additional levels of scrutiny, as described in section 4.9 of this document. You must ensure these risks are described and planned for in your application and safety documentation for the shoot. Note, filming involving stunts,

² Go to www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz click on “Plans, policies bylaws reports and projects”; click on “Our bylaws” then click on “Current bylaws”
firearms or fireworks are not likely to be approved for applications to film on the tūpuna maunga.

What are the boundaries of the Auckland Region?
The Auckland Region spans from Wellsford in the north to Pukekohe in the south. For a map of the Auckland Region go to the Auckland Council website [www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz](http://www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz), click on “GeoMaps (GIS viewer)” in the “get it done online section”.

Why have the production chosen a particular location?
There are many variables as to why a location has been chosen. Briefs can be very specific and the requirements for the location have to balance the creative needs of the brief and the logistics of getting crew and equipment into the location.

Sometimes we deliver to an international market which requires specific looks to be believable for the viewer. For example, High St has a universal look that translates to a European/British/period cityscape. Bethells Beach has a unique look that cannot be found anywhere else in the world.

What if my shoot involves a drone?
If you plan to use a drone for commercial or organised filming in a public space you will need a film permit, even if you believe you are a low impact crew. If your shoot is going to make use of a camera on a drone alongside your other filming, make sure planned drone operations are included in your planning and application.

Depending on your location there may be additional requirements to work through to manage the use of the drone, which may include a requirement to use a spotter, traffic management plans and, or in some areas, the drone operator will be required to have part 102 certification from the Civil Aviation Authority. In some locations the use of a drone may need to consider and manage the potential impact of drones on native species such as birds.

To get a permit to film using a drone, your public liability certificate must show that you have insurance for the use of a drone – this means you need aviation cover.

What should I do if I have an enquiry about filming in my neighbourhood?
If you have an enquiry about any aspect of filming activity in your neighbourhood please contact the Auckland Council Call Centre on 09 301 0101 – and ask to speak to a film facilitator or send an email to screen@aucklandnz.com and one of our film facilitators will get back to you.
2.4 Filming impacts and Auckland Council requirements

Table one provides an overall indication of council requirements as they relate to the scale of production. However, as each film shoot is assessed on a case-by-case basis, and acknowledging that what may be considered medium impact in one location could be deemed high impact in another; Table one should be read as a guide only.

All productions filming in public open space must comply with Section three: Screen Industry Code of Conduct, even if they are low impact and do not need a permit, or have been granted a fee waiver or are undertaking a recce.

Determination of impact is based on the total impact that the proposed shoots will have on a place and on public access to a place, which can differ based on the location chosen. The types of factors considered when determining impact include, but are not exclusive to:

- the number of people involved in the shoot;
- the location, including (but not exclusive to) whether it is an operational site, a sensitive natural environment, a site of significance to mana whenua, is on or near a heritage place, access to the site is difficult or the site is subject to specific controls in Auckland Council plans, policies or bylaws;
- time on site;
- the type of equipment and props being used on site (note any commercial or organised filming using a drone will require a permit to film);
- access requirements and impact on public access to the location;
- vehicles associated with filming.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of people on site</th>
<th>Number of equipment vehicles (trucks, vans, utes, cars)</th>
<th>Unit base/catering &amp; Structural requirements</th>
<th>Equipment requirements</th>
<th>Traffic management (footpaths and roads)</th>
<th>Impact on the public and consultation requirements</th>
<th>Environmental</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Up to 9 crew/talent. Online, photography, News crew and documentary.</td>
<td>No trucks. Vans, utes, cars only.</td>
<td>No unit base/catering area required. No structures.</td>
<td>Handheld camera and sound equipment. 1 camera on tripod. 1 Battery operated light. No generator.</td>
<td>No filming on roads or traffic management. Footpaths and public walkways unblocked.</td>
<td>No disruption is caused to council stakeholders, businesses, residents, motorists or other events in the vicinity. Immediate area consultation may be required.</td>
<td>Assessment of the potential positive and negative impacts of filming on the environment and native species of flora and fauna will be determined depending on the location and a range of factors including, but not limited to, time of year, potential for cumulative effects, nature and scale of the proposed filming activity, time on site, the type of equipment and props being used and ability to mitigate and or manage any effects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Up to 30 crew and 20 talent.</td>
<td>No more than 6 trucks.</td>
<td>Small unit base/catering area required. Minimal structures, e.g. ez-ups.</td>
<td>Minimal equipment, e.g. camera tracks, slider and lights on stands.</td>
<td>Minimal traffic management required/ minor roads.</td>
<td>May be some minor disruption to council stakeholders, businesses, residents, motorists or other events in the vicinity. Local area letter drop.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Up to 50 crew 100 talent.</td>
<td>No more than 12 trucks.</td>
<td>Unit base/catering area required. Some structures including ezis and mega decks.</td>
<td>Equipment used, e.g. camera tracks, dolly, lights on stands, camera cranes</td>
<td>Traffic management required, including LV road closures.</td>
<td>Likely to be some disruption to council stakeholders, businesses, residents, or motorists. Local area letter drop. Some individual consultation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50+ crew and 100+ talent.</td>
<td>12+ trucks.</td>
<td>Large unit base/catering area required. Significant structures and construction.</td>
<td>Extensive equipment.</td>
<td>Significant traffic management required/multiple roads or main roads.</td>
<td>Likely to be significant disruption to council stakeholders, businesses, residents or motorists. Significant letter drop area and local consultation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 The guidelines set out in Table 1 do not apply to the Tapuna Maunga Authority, separate guidance will be given to applicants upon inquiring about filming on Tapuna maunga.

4 Note for the purpose of this table trucks are defined as 3 tonne or over.
2.5 Filming fees and associated costs

The table below outlines the fees required for filming in public space managed by Auckland Council. Fees may be waived or discounts applied to low budget or student films, or for filming carried out for charitable or tourism purposes. Fees and other council charges are also subject to change.

Table 2. Fees for filming in public space

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Impact Level</th>
<th>Low Impact</th>
<th>Medium Impact</th>
<th>High Impact</th>
<th>Major Impact</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$0 - $50</td>
<td>$200 - $400</td>
<td>$400 - $800</td>
<td>$800 - $1600</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Fees are shown in NZ$ and inclusive of 15% GST)

There are likely to be other council charges relating to filming in Auckland’s public space. These charges may include, but are not necessarily limited to, costs related to resource consents and building compliance fees, parking permits, road closures and the hire of Council managed facilities. Bonds may also be required to cover any environmental or property damage with the costs dependent on the impact and location of the shoot.

Production companies will also be responsible for any costs associated with public notices, if required, engaging private companies for traffic management, resource consent applications or any other required service.

---

5 The fee structure outlined in Table 2 does not apply to filming on the Tūpuna maunga. The Tūpuna Maunga Authority have their own fee structure and discussion about fees will take place upon inquiry about filming on tūpuna maunga.
3 Section Three: Screen Industry Code of Conduct

Screen Auckland endorses this Auckland Council screen industry code of conduct. To ensure Auckland is a film friendly city in the long-term, it is essential to manage the impact of filming on our environment, local residents, businesses and commuters. Filming can create vibrancy in communities where locals are informed, engaged and sometimes even involved.

Locals that have had positive experiences of filming are much more likely to welcome screen production companies into their neighbourhood in the future. Conversely, a negative experience of filming can make it very difficult for production companies to gain the cooperation of locals in the future.

3.1 Standard conditions for filming activity in the Auckland Region

A film permit gives screen production companies limited permission to occupy and use public open space. Screen production companies must seek to limit inconvenience to neighbouring businesses and residents to ensure the sustainability of filming in public spaces. Screen Auckland’s permitting process seeks to ensure that this happens through the conditions of the film permit which incorporate standard conditions as outlined below, and any site specific conditions that are developed on a case by case basis.

The location manager, production manager, producer, or organiser, as appropriate, must have a copy of the permit to film on site along with the Auckland Film Protocol and be familiar with the requirements of the protocol.

Outlined below are standard conditions for filming activity in the Auckland Region. Please note that these conditions apply to recce’s as well as film shoots.

An overview of the standard conditions for the use of Auckland Council Parks, Reserves, Squares, Streets or Facilities may also apply and can be found in section 4.3 of this document.

3.4.23.1.1 Hours and days of filming

Filming activity that generates any kind of noise or light disturbance will need to comply with the standards set out in the Auckland Unitary Plan or Hauraki Gulf Islands District Plan, as discussed in sections 3.1.5 and 4.7.3 of this document. In consideration of affected stakeholders and landholders, the following provisions also relate to the hours and days of filming:

- In City centre retail areas – Where possible, filming to occur in the weekend and ideally before 10am and after 5pm on Saturday or before 11am and after 4pm on Sunday. In the four weeks preceding Christmas, filming will be restricted to before 10am and after 5pm on Saturdays and before 11am and after 4pm on Sundays only. Exceptions may be made for productions that can wait for longer than the standard 3-5 working days for a decision on their application, but this will be determined in consultation with the relevant business association.
- **In retail areas outside of the City centre** – Where possible, filming is to occur outside of business hours OR at traditionally quiet times as determined in consultation agreed with the local business association. Film facilitators can assist making the appropriate contacts.

- **In all retail areas** – Filming to avoid key retail areas on the week preceding Christmas, and to refrain from filming on Mother’s Day and Father’s Day as determined in consultation with without the express consent of the local business association or the local board should no local business association exist.

- **In all business areas** – Where possible, filming to avoid times of high pedestrian and commuter traffic i.e. the beginning and end of the working day. These times may vary depending on the nature of the local business.

- **In high use parks and reserves** – Filming is typically restricted to weekdays, apart from quiet times of the year as agreed with the parks department.

- **In residential areas and places of accommodation businesses** – Filming activity that generates any kind of lighting or noise disturbance must comply with noise and lighting standards set out in the Auckland Unitary Plan or Hauraki Gulf Islands District Plan and should set up no earlier than 6.00am on a weekday and 7.00am on a weekend, and finish no later than 10pm on a weekday or 11pm on the weekend.

- **Night shoots** – If you are planning a night shoot, please contact Screen Auckland to discuss options such as pre-setting, appropriate locations and approvals.

**3.4.33.1.2 Parking and loading**

Unless expressly permitted otherwise, parking and loading arrangements for filming are as follows:

- **Minimise on street parking** – On street parking should be minimised as much as possible and access maintained for crucial residential and business deliveries. Screen Auckland will assess approve the final numbers on a case by case basis.

- **Essential vehicles** – Essential vehicles (i.e. equipment and/or large vehicles) to be parked legally and with the relevant permits. Where possible, essential vehicles to be parked in front of buildings that are either vacant or closed during the hours of filming activity.

- **Crew and cast vehicles** – Crew and cast vehicles and other non-essential vehicles are prohibited from car park spaces required for retail customers or users of other neighbouring facilities such as community centres, libraries, sports facilities, schools etc.

- **All vehicles to be parked legally** – All vehicles associated with the filming activity must be parked legally e.g. facing the correct way, not on yellow lines etc.

- **Maintaining access to loading zones** – Access to loading zones for the purposes of servicing and delivering goods to and from local businesses must be maintained.

- **Use of loading zones** – During restricted times, production companies to use loading zones for the purposes of delivering or collecting goods for no longer than the times specified on signage (generally no longer than 5 minutes).

Production companies seeking to reserve specific parking areas for essential vehicles are likely to require film parking permits, see sections 4.2.1 and 4.2.2 for further information.

---

6 "Unless expressly permitted otherwise" refers to express permissions granted by affected stakeholders. Just who those stakeholders are depends on the location and impacts of the film shoot. Screen Auckland can advise.
3.4.43.1.3 Public pedestrian access
Unless expressly permitted otherwise, pedestrian arrangements for filming are required as follows:

- **Use of location / production assistants** – Location Assistants to be used to keep the public informed of the filming activity and escort them through the filming area.

- **Maintenance of pedestrian passage** – Pedestrian passage to be maintained through the public space the filming activity is occurring on and crew and cast to keep a low profile. On occasion productions can ask pedestrians to hold from walking through a shot for a maximum of two – five minutes depending on the location and the accessibility to alternative routes. Locations with high pedestrian traffic are likely to be restricted.

- **Modification of pedestrian passage** – Minor modifications to pedestrian passage to be developed in conjunction with Screen Auckland and affected stakeholders if required. In the case of a footpath closure or detour route, a TMP drawn up by a certified traffic management company must be supplied.

- **Access to doorways** – Unrestricted access to doorways to be maintained.

- **Wheelchair access** – The filming activity allows for the needs of wheelchair users to move through the public space and/or safely access an appropriate detour.

3.4.53.1.4 Filming activity on roads
Any filming-related activity that changes or is likely to change the normal use of a road will require a TMP which must be drawn up by a certified traffic management company and must be approved by Auckland Transport. A TMP must ensure the following:

- **Traffic Impacts** – The operation and safety of the transport network is maintained.

- **Maintaining vehicle access** - Access to residences, businesses and recreational areas are maintained.

- **Business deliveries and servicing** - Crucial deliveries and business servicing can occur.

- **Filming on any of Auckland’s cycle-ways may not require a TMP, but specific health and safety precautions will be required.**

3.4.63.1.5 Noise and lighting
The Auckland Unitary Plan and the Hauraki Gulf Islands District Plan include noise and lighting provisions designed to manage their effects. Noise and lighting should be kept to a minimum before 7am and after 10pm Monday to Saturday and before 9am and after 6pm on a Sunday. Production companies must comply with Auckland Unitary Plan noise levels and with the requirements of the Resource Management Act 1991.

In some locations production companies will also need to consider the impact that noise and lighting may have on wildlife such as native birds. Screen Auckland will inform production companies early on in the process if this is likely to be a requirement of their desired location and:

- **will work with the production company and appropriate stakeholders to plan for and manage these effects**
Production companies are also required to use blimped generators in locations when noise is likely to impact on adjacent parties e.g. cafes with outdoor seating. Screen Auckland will be able to advise.

3.4.73.1.6 Health and safety responsibilities

Health and Safety in New Zealand workplaces is regulated by the Health & Safety at Work Act 2015, which promotes health and safety management in the workplace and focuses on the prevention of harm to employees at work.

Film crews must comply with:

- the requirements of the Health and Safety at Work Act 2015
- the ScreenSafe Health and Safety Guidelines
- guidance on best-practice processes for the engagement of crew in the New Zealand screen production industry as outlined in the 2017 Blue Book
- any specific health and safety requirements or instructions set out in, or issued in conjunction with, your film permit.

It is the responsibility of production companies to ensure that public safety is not compromised as a result of their filming activity. As part of your application for a film permit you will be required to provide a site specific Health and Safety Plan, see section 4.6.1 for more information.

3.4.83.1.7 Removal of rubbish and returning a site to its original condition

It is the responsibility of production companies to ensure that any area associated with the filming activity is returned to its original condition, including the removal of all signs and waste. The removal and disposal of all rubbish must take place immediately after the filming activity.

Auckland has set a goal of being zero waste by 2040 and we expect film crews to play their part by minimising waste and using zero waste practices. It is encouraged that all filming activities provide the necessary waste facilities for separation of waste streams (organic, recyclables, landfill and paper/card); with clear and appropriate signage and that relevant service providers are used to ensure maximum diversion of waste from landfill. To minimize waste accumulation, consider the productions procurement for example, avoiding single serve items when catering (such as plates and cutlery). More detail can be found in section 3.9 of this document. Where electrical or hazardous materials are used, these items are to be disposed of responsibly through facilities that divert waste streams from landfill.

For more information on how to dispose of a range of items and materials responsibly please use Auckland Council’s online Recycling Search Tool.

---

5. Go to https://www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz click on “rubbish and recycling”, then click on “how to get rid of unwanted items”
3.4.03.1.8 Communication and consultation

Production companies carrying out filming activity must communicate with residents, businesses and any other parties affected by the activity. What this communication involves depends on the scale and location of the filming activity as outlined below:

- **Minimum requirements** – As a minimum requirement, production companies should deliver a flyer to each residence or business in the affected area. The flyer should contain the following information and be approved by a Screen Auckland Film Facilitator prior to its distribution:
  - the name of the activity;
  - the name of the organiser;
  - the general nature of the activity;
  - the duration of the activity including set up and pack down periods;
  - the location managers contact details before and on the day of the event - including mobile phone numbers;
  - Auckland Council’s contact centre phone number: 09 301 0101;
  - in some cases a parking plan or site map might be required.

- **Notice required for medium impact shoots** – Medium impact film shoots must give affected residents at least 48 hours’ notice and businesses at least two working days.

- **Notice required for high to major impact shoots** – High and major impact film shoots must give affected residents at least 48 hours’ notice, unless access to their properties will be affected in which case 5 days is required. Affected businesses require 5 working days’ notice and their feedback must be sought.

- **Road closures** – There is a legislative process that needs to be followed for a road closure which involves two public notices, as discussed in section 4.1.2 of this document, in printed news media to inform the public about the road closure. This needs to be actioned at least 12 working days before the proposed date of the road closure, and the production company are responsible for notifying affected businesses and residents at this time also. Longer lead times are recommended for traditionally busy periods such as Easter, Anzac Day and Christmas. Information about planned road closures is also available on Auckland Transport’s website [https://at.govt.nz/road-works-disruptions](https://at.govt.nz/road-works-disruptions).

- **In City centre retail areas** – Face to face consultation with businesses is required for medium to major impact filming in City centre retail areas. This must be carried out at least 5 working days prior to the filming activity and involve delivering flyers to the business in person, recording the name of individuals and businesses consulted with, and recording their initial feedback. Productions are requested to incorporate feedback from businesses wherever possible, and supply this to Screen Auckland.

3.2 Compliance with relevant plans, policies, bylaws, and rules

Production companies must comply with Auckland Council. There are a number of plans, policies, bylaws, and rules in relation to conduct in public open space that production companies, like everybody else, are required to adhere to. These include, but are not limited to, alcohol bans, animal control, vehicles on beaches, signage rules and smokefree areas.

Maintaining responsible and positive behaviour when filming in public open space is important to ensure ongoing access to these locations.
Production companies planning to use signage, including directional signage such as location arrows, should also make themselves aware of the Signage Bylaw in place throughout the region, and any relevant Unitary Plan rules relating to signage. Up-to-date information concerning council plans, policies and bylaws can be found on Auckland Council’s website and on the Auckland Transport website, or Screen Auckland can advise.

3.3 Compliance with the Auckland Film Protocol and film permit conditions

Full compliance with the Auckland Film Protocol and the conditions of the film permit is expected. If a production company fails to comply with Auckland Council policy, plans or bylaws, with the Auckland Film Protocol or the conditions of a film permit:

- the shoot will be shut down and the production could be blacklisted from future filming in public spaces in Auckland for a period of up to three months;
- the production company could be charged a location fee after the shoot takes place;
- the production may not be covered by any insurance that they have;
- equipment could be seized;
- the production company could be fined up to $20,000.

Production companies must ensure that they understand permit conditions and that all filming activities are conducted in accordance with these conditions.

Auckland Council will monitor filming activity at its discretion, particularly for filming in sensitive areas and those considered to have a high or major impact. Production companies must follow any directions given by staff of Auckland Council or staff of the wider council organisation.

3.4 Filming potentially offensive material

The filming of content injurious to the public good may be subject to additional levels of scrutiny to ensure consistency with council’s legal and policy obligations. Production companies filming content for television commercials that may be considered socially or environmentally irresponsible should consult the Advertising Standards Authorities website.

3.5 Filming on private premises

Production companies using private businesses or residences for film shoots should be aware of the Auckland Film Protocol, the requirements of the Auckland Unitary Plan and the need to be respectful of adjacent businesses and residents, particularly with regards to on-street parking, lighting, noise and the use of public open space. When filming on private premises, it is recommended that the production company...
speaks to Screen Auckland first as they may be aware of activities and issues in the public spaces immediately adjacent to the premises that can assist with the planning of the filming activity.

Other things for production companies to keep in mind:

- that the managing agent or the owner of the premise agrees to the filming;
- the degree to which the premise has been used for filming in the past, the potential impact on neighbours due to the high use of technical vehicles in the vicinity, and how best to mitigate this;
- that all parking requirements are able to be met (remembering that Auckland Transport is the only agency entitled to issue parking permits);
- that electric power can be supplied or there is a possibility of connection to existing networks.

Screen Auckland welcomes discussions with private property owners on how they can work together in the best interests of production companies and local communities.

3.6 Using local businesses
Productions are urged to use local businesses for catering and supply. Screen Auckland may be able to assist with making the necessary contacts for the local business association.

3.7 Smokefree Areas
In accordance with the Auckland Council Smokefree Policy, many public places in Auckland, including parks and reserves, plazas and squares, public beaches and public transport facilities are designated as smokefree areas. Up-to-date information on which public places are now smokefree can be found on Auckland Council’s website\(^{15}\).

3.8 Filming in sensitive areas and the management of cumulative effects
Depending on the impact and the nature of the film shoot, some communities may be particularly sensitive to filming impacts. This could be due to the cumulative effects of frequent filming and/or events in the area, bad experiences with film crews or concerns about a community’s media image and how they have been portrayed in the past. Screen Auckland will inform production companies if this is the case for their desired location as soon as possible, and will work with production companies to identify ways of addressing local concerns or accessing alternative sites.

3.9 Protecting sensitive natural environments
Auckland’s natural environment provides stunning locations and is a key reason for filming here. The many different natural environments across Auckland - our harbours, beaches and islands, our maunga, forests, streams and parks - are places

\(^{15}\) Go to [www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz](http://www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz) click on "Plans, policies, bylaws, reports and projects" then click on "Our policies" and then click on "Smokefree policy"
of importance to Aucklanders. It's important to Aucklanders that Auckland's natural environment is treated with respect.

The film permit process will need to consider and plan for the potential impact on natural environments. This will take into account a range of factors including, but not limited to, location, the time of year, nature and scale of the proposed filming activity, time on site, the type of equipment and props being used, potential for cumulative effects, and ability to mitigate and or manage any effects.

Some parts of the Auckland Region contain sensitive natural environments which may be more easily damaged by external factors. In some areas roadways, parking and formed paths are restricted and production crews will need to take care to avoid damage to native flora and natural features. When filming in sensitive natural environments, such as around sensitive dune systems or wetland areas, it is essential that film crews work in a manner that protects such environments. Screen Auckland will inform production companies early on in the process if their desired location is considered sensitive and will facilitate discussions with appropriate stakeholders and the production company on what can be done to protect these environments. Further information on filming on beaches and in the coastal marine area is provided in section 4.3.6.

3.10 Environmental sustainability

To protect the local environment it is necessary for production companies to minimise the environmental impacts of filming operations and preserve local biodiversity.

Consider how crew and cast can travel to and from the film location and whether public transport, buses/shuttles and or ridesharing can be utilised and promoted. Look for opportunities to reduce greenhouse gas emissions by effective fleet management and energy efficient electrical equipment.

One way to minimise your impact on the environment is to reduce the amount of waste produced during filming. Auckland has set a goal of being zero waste by 2040 and we expect film crews to play their part by minimising waste and using zero waste practices. Make decisions about set design, wardrobe and make-up that incorporates a sustainable approach. Look for opportunities to reuse, repurpose or recycle materials, such as props and costumes used during the production. Prevent unnecessary water usage and minimise any noise and air pollution.

Minimise and manage waste to reduce waste to landfill. Look for opportunities to reduce waste from the outset – consider if it is possible to substitute something that causes waste with something that doesn’t. For example, can single use disposables like plastic water bottles and plastic cups be replaced with reusable alternatives? If not, are there recyclable or compostable options that would avoid items being sent to landfill. Set up waste systems to separate different waste streams (organic, recyclable, landfill, paper and card); to manage and reduce the amount of waste going to landfill.
3.11 Protecting Auckland’s historic heritage

When filming on or near historic heritage places, such as an archaeological site or historic building, it is essential that film crews work in a manner that protects these places. Screen Auckland will inform production companies early on if their desired location is on or near a historic heritage place and will facilitate discussions with appropriate stakeholders and the production company on what can be done to protect these places and mitigate any risks to historic heritage.

Consultation with mana whenua and Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga may be required.

3.12 Protecting our native species

New Zealand’s geographic isolation means we have many unique native plants, birds and animals some of which are classified as endangered species.

Filming in some location will need to consider, plan for and manage the negative effects that filming may have on our native species. Depending on the proposed filming activities, filming may be restricted in some locations at some times of year, such as breeding and nesting periods. Filming in some locations will be subject to conditions to ensure film activity does not negatively impact on native species. Screen Auckland will inform production companies early on in the process if this is likely to be a consideration at their desired location and:

- will work with the production company and appropriate stakeholders to plan for and manage these effects;
- or to identify an alternative location if the effects cannot be appropriately managed.

Introduced weeds, pests and pathogens, like kauri dieback and myrtle rust, pose a threat to our native species. To manage the spread of pests and protect our native species Auckland Council may place additional conditions on film permits, in accordance with the Regional Pest Management Plan or in response to emerging threats. Production companies must comply with any conditions, guidelines, or approved procedures set out in or issued in conjunction with your film permit.

3.13 Going the extra mile

To maintain a sustainable industry, it is important that local residents, communities, iwi and businesses have a positive experience of filming. For example, for businesses this could be increased custom through production companies using their products or services, or promotion of their business in the film shoot or credits. For local residents this could be through giving back to the community by providing entertainment in the local park. Engaging with the community and iwi is also a good way to understand the local environment and community dynamics you have chosen to film in and can add value to your filming project.

Some other ideas on how screen production companies could ‘give back’ to communities they are filming in are listed below:
• communities often like to see their local area represented on film. If the film project is something that will be screened in New Zealand, inform local residents and businesses of this and consider ways of letting people know when and where it will be screening. Alternatively, send them a copy of the finished product;
• acknowledging local communities and organisations in the credits;
• donate to local schools or community organisations;
• carry out promotional filming for affected areas (for example conservation or heritage areas);
• consider how local iwi can benefit and be recognised such as opportunities to refer to the history of an area, provide employment, use correct Māori names for sites and acknowledge these in the credits;
• invite locals to work as extras;
• consider the possibility of work experience opportunities.

3.14 Insurance requirements
Those undertaking filming activity on Auckland’s open spaces will likely require public liability insurance to cover any damages done to council property, private property or serious accidents caused by the filming activity. If you will be using a drone during filming, your public liability insurance will need to include an aviation clause and you will need to list the pilot and aircraft details. Please contact Screen Auckland for further information.

3.15 Concerns about filming
If you wish to make an enquiry about any aspect of filming activity in your neighbourhood please contact the Auckland Council Call Centre on 09 301 0101 – and ask to speak to a film facilitator or send an email to screen@aucklandnz.com and one of our film facilitators will get back to you.
4  Section Four: The approval process in detail

The fourth section of this document provides further detail on the approval processes associated with filming as they relate to the different functions of the wider council organisation. This includes:

- traffic management;
- parking essential vehicles;
- filming on parks and reserves;
- filming on other properties owned by Auckland Council or Council Controlled Organisations;
- filming on public transport or public transport facilities;
- health and safety considerations;
- heritage considerations;
- resource consent considerations;
- building consent considerations;
- special effects, stunts and firearms.

4.1 Traffic management

Any filming-related activity that changes or is likely to change the normal use of a road will require a TMP to be prepared by a certified traffic management company and approved by the road controlling authority. Depending on the impact filming has on the normal use of the road you may also need to apply for a temporary road closure.

Costs of traffic management planning and implementation, including the cost of public notices, if required, are the responsibility of the production.

In most cases in Auckland the road controlling authority will be Auckland Transport, a council controlled organisation of Auckland Council. Auckland Transport is responsible for all of Auckland’s public roads (except motorways and state highways), footpaths and parking.

4.1.1 Roads controlled by the New Zealand Transport Agency

In some cases the road controlling authority will be the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZ Transport Agency). The NZ Transport Agency is responsible for the management of all motorways, state highways, over-bridges, on-ramps and off-ramps in Auckland. Screen Auckland can assist with identifying the appropriate contacts in the NZ Transport Agency.
4.1.2 Applying for a temporary road closure
If you need to close part or all of a road, you will need to apply for permission from Auckland Transport and there is legal requirement\(^{16}\) for two public notices to be placed in printed news media to inform the public about the road closure.

Screen Auckland needs at least 12 working days’ notice to book the two required public notices in the printed news media. Longer lead times are recommended for traditionally busy periods such as Easter, Anzac Day and Christmas. At the time of writing, the cost for the two public notices came to approximately NZ$1000. The costs associated with public notices are the responsibility of the production.

4.1.3 Developing a traffic management plan
Auckland Transport can provide guidance as to the level of TMP required for filming in different road environments, however it is the responsibility of the production company to source the necessary assistance to develop one.

Traffic management equipment (cones, barriers, signs etc.) can only be deployed by a suitably qualified person. In most cases this will be a Site Traffic Management Supervisor level 1 (STMS LV 1) or STMS LV2/3 for level 2 roads which carry 10,000 vehicles per day or higher.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 3. Traffic management plan approval timeframes for suburban streets</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Suburban streets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low impact (e.g. footpath closure)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium impact (e.g. lane closure)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High impact (e.g. road closure)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.1.4 Cost of developing a traffic management plan
The cost of developing traffic management plans and their implementation during filming can vary considerably and escalate quickly depending on the complexities of the proposed location and the filming scenario. To ensure a good outcome, anyone considering filming on main roads must establish if the location is feasible in the early stages of location scouting. Contact Screen Auckland for preliminary advice on the proposed location and approach a qualified traffic management provider for an early indication of costs.

\(^{16}\) Under the Local Government Act 1974
4.2 Parking essential vehicles

A screen production company parking essential vehicles in the street should send a parking plan to Screen Auckland for them to assess and advise on where best to park these vehicles. As part of the assessment, Screen Auckland will consider how much pressure has been placed on parking in the proposed area, and alternatives that may have less impact on any affected businesses or local residents. Parking plans will receive a response within 1-2 working days.

4.2.1 Film parking permits (non-enforceable)

Production companies seeking to reserve specific parking areas for essential vehicles are likely to require film parking permits. These allow permit trucks essential vehicles to park on a defined part of a road when necessary.

Film parking permits allow a production to place cones within the road reserve to temporarily reserve an area prior to vehicles arriving onsite, but do not give permit holders the power to tow other vehicles parked in the permit area. As a courtesy, permit holders should notify businesses and residents in the immediate area via a letter drop or door knocking at least 48 hours in advance. Production companies may also want to consider having a marshal on site to politely advise people of the permitted parking area. Film parking permits take around 2-3 working days to be approved and additional charges for use of parking spaces may apply in some areas.

Please note these permits may not be used for crew or cast vehicles.

Film parking permits are not available for use in loading zones, bus stops or in public time restricted parking areas where parking is restricted to 30 minutes or less.

As the process of reserving parking spaces involves working within the road corridor, it is a health and safety requirement that any staff undertaking this activity have been briefed on the operational requirements of the Screen Auckland Reserved Parking document (SARP) and the applicant has signed the SARP TMP.

Screen Auckland can assist film production companies to apply for film parking permits.

4.2.2 Temporary parking resolutions (enforceable)

Temporary parking resolutions are a short-term legal designation to change existing parking restrictions in a specified area. Temporary parking resolutions should only be considered where the public needs to be excluded from an area for safety or signage lines or there is genuinely no alternative parking available for essential vehicles. Timeframes associated with temporary parking resolutions are generally not as favourable as those for film parking permits. Vehicles can legally be towed from the areas designated by temporary parking resolutions, however this should be a last resort as the standard notification procedures of letter drops and door knocking in adjacent buildings should have alerted most people to moving their vehicles.
The Traffic Control Committee has delegation for the approval of parking resolutions. The Traffic Control Committee meets every second Friday to consider applications. Applications must be submitted at least 12 working days before each meeting.\(^{17}\)

### 4.2.3 Parking essential vehicles legally

It is a legal requirement that vehicles are parked facing the right way (i.e. not facing oncoming traffic), and are not parked over driveways, footpaths or berms.

### 4.3 Filming on parks, reserves and other public open space

Auckland Council manages more than 4000 parks and reserves. These parks vary from small local neighbourhood open spaces and sports parks, to iconic premier parks like Auckland Domain (Puakekawa), and conservation areas such as the Wāitākere Ranges. They may be coastal reserves, volcanic cones or homes to popular playgrounds. Information concerning parks and reserves can be found on Auckland Council’s website, and Screen Auckland’s film facilitation team can assist with finding suitable parks, reserves and other public open space (such as squares and plazas) for filming.

Landowner approval is required to film on any park or reserve, and permission will depend on natural, cultural, landscape and recreational values being adequately protected. In the Wāitākere Ranges Heritage Area, the WRHAA Wāitākere Ranges Heritage Area Act 2008 will need to be taken into account by landowners when considering filming applications. Production companies granted permission to film in the Wāitākere Ranges Heritage Area will need to ensure that filming activities comply with the requirements of the WRHAA. Further information about the WRHAA is included in the Key New Zealand Legislation section of this document. A number of plans exist in relation to public spaces within Auckland, such as the Tūpuna Maunga Integrated Management Plan and park specific management plans like the Auckland Domain Masterplan, and the Tāmaki Drive Masterplan, and these will be taken into account by landowners when considering filming applications. Filming in high use parks and reserves is typically restricted to weekdays, apart from quiet times of year.

Iwi are key landholders of Auckland’s parks and reserves and council recognises that Māori have a special cultural and spiritual relationship with the land.

#### 4.3.1 Filming on Auckland’s tūpuna maunga (volcanic cones)

In July 2014, Government passed legislation to provide Treaty of Waitangi redress for the shared interests of 13 Auckland iwi and hapū in relation to 14 tūpuna maunga (ancestral mountains, also referred to as Auckland's volcanic cones), motu (islands) and land within Tāmaki Makaurau (Auckland).

Auckland's volcanic cones (tūpuna maunga) come under the administration of the Tūpuna Maunga Authority o Tāmaki Makaurau Authority (Tūpuna Maunga Authority). The Authority is independent of Auckland Council.

---

17 The 12 days allows Auckland Transport staff to draft the appropriate resolutions and place the application on the agenda.
Under the terms of the settlement, the tūpuna maunga are vested in mana whenua, public access is maintained, each maunga will remain a reserve, and the council will continue to be responsible for the routine management of the maunga, under the direction of the Tūpuna Maunga Authority.

The tūpuna maunga sites, and in particular the tihi (summit), are considered tapu (sacred) and regard is given to this when considering applications to film on the tūpuna maunga. All commercial filming on the maunga requires the approval of the Tūpuna Maunga Authority. Screen Auckland facilitates all requests for approval to film on the tūpuna maunga. Each application is assessed on a case-by-case basis in relation to the objectives and policies that apply to the tūpuna maunga\(^{18}\) and proposed content. Approval to film will be subject to conditions and restrictions set by the Tūpuna Maunga Authority.

Application costs, timeframes, approval processes and location fees for filming on maunga vary depending on the scale and impact of filming. Locations which are in higher demand will be subject to higher location fees. A bond may be required; the bond is fully refundable on confirmation that all conditions associated with the approval have been satisfactorily met.

Screen Auckland can provide further information and advice around requests for approval to film on maunga, including timeframes and fees. To ensure you have sufficient time for your application to film to be assessed by the Tūpuna Maunga Authority, contact Screen Auckland to discuss your project. More information on the Tūpuna Maunga Authority can be found at [www.maunga.nz](http://www.maunga.nz).

4.3.2 Regional parks

There are 27 regional parks in the Auckland Region with beautiful beaches, bush, wildlife and recreational opportunities galore. Responsible filming activity on regional parks is welcome, however due to the unique and sensitive nature of regional parks, contact Screen Auckland’s film facilitation team who can assist with the feasibility of using regional parks for your filming activity.

4.3.3 Parks and reserves not managed by Auckland Council

The Department of Conservation (DOC) are responsible for the management of some parks and reserves, such as Rangitoto Island and Cornwall Park is managed by the Cornwall Park Trust Board. These parties have different processes, fees and requirements. In cases where Screen Auckland does not issue film permits for a particular park, the film facilitation team can assist applicants with making the appropriate contacts within these organisations.

Watercare is a Council Controlled Organisation that provides water and wastewater services to the Auckland Region and is responsible for a number of dams, waterways and treatment plants dotted throughout Auckland’s parks. Screen Auckland will be able to advise if your proposed shoot encroaches on Watercare property. Further

---

\(^{18}\) For more information about the Tūpuna Maunga Authority, and to read the Tūpuna Maunga Integrated Management Plan, go to [www.maunga.nz](http://www.maunga.nz)
information on filming on Watercare property can be found in section 4.4.3 of this document.

4.3.4 Kauri dieback

Kauri are a native tree and are considered a national treasure; a Jurassic age species they can grow to more than 50 metres tall and can live for well over a thousand years.

Kauri dieback disease is killing kauri trees in the Auckland Region and threatening kauri with extinction. The kauri dieback disease is caused by a soilborne pathogen that is long-lived, invisible to the eye and can be spread by as little as a pinhead of infected soil or mud being tracked from one area to another. There is currently no cure for kauri dieback.

If you are granted a permit to film in a regional park where kauri are present your conditions of consent will require you to follow approved hygiene procedures, including a requirement to clean gear, tyres and footwear before and after filming on a reserve or a park. These requirements are to help prevent the spread of the disease.

More information on kauri dieback and on how to avoid spreading the disease can be found on the Auckland Council website19 or at www.kauridieback.co.nz.

Some areas managed by Auckland Council, including at the time of writing, the forested area of the Waitākere Ranges and some parts of the Hunua Ranges Regional Park, have been closed to prevent further spread of kauri dieback and protect kauri. Up-to-date information on local and regional parks, reserves and public tracks/areas which have been closed can be found on Auckland Council’s website19.

Screen Auckland can also provide you with further guidance about areas which are closed and will work with production companies to identify an alternative site if your preferred location has been closed to protect kauri.

4.3.5 Managing the risk of damage to parks

Conditions may be imposed on any parkland use agreement to protect the park environment, for the health, safety and wellbeing of the visitor, or to facilitate park operations. In general conditions relate to:

- the location of the activity;
- the duration of the activity;
- the time of day and year the activity may be undertaken;
- the number of people who may participate;
- the use of park facilities and services;
- measures for mitigating adverse effects on the environment, natural and heritage resources, existing users and the general public;
- health and safety factors;
- reinstatement requirements;
- measures for monitoring the effects of the activity;

19 Go to http://www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz then click on “environment”, then “plants and animals”, then “pests and weeds”, then “protect our kauri trees”
- any modifications / alterations to the proposed activity and associated infrastructure;
- the review of the approval and/or any conditions imposed.

Bonds are often required when filming on parks and reserves, and council strongly recommends that production companies have contingency plans as it is possible that a park may become unavailable due to wet ground conditions.

4.3.6 Filming on beaches and in the coastal marine area
Due to the unique and sensitive nature of Auckland’s coastal environment proposals for filming activity on beaches and in the coastal marine area are subject to higher degrees of scrutiny which are likely to impact on filming timeframes.

Any impacts caused by filming on beaches must be adequately mitigated.

All filming activity on the foreshore or on the water is subject to compliance with the Auckland Unitary Plan and the relevant bylaws as discussed in section 3.2 and 4.8 of this document.

Council must also give effect to Policy 20(1) of the New Zealand Coastal Policy statement that relates to vehicles on beaches. This policy states:

(1) Control use of vehicles, apart from emergency vehicles, on beaches, foreshore, seabed and adjacent public land where:

(a) damage to dune or other geological systems and processes; or
(b) harm to ecological systems or to indigenous flora and fauna, for example marine mammal and bird habitats or breeding areas and shellfish beds; or
(c) danger to other beach users; or
(d) disturbance of the peaceful enjoyment of the beach environment; or
(e) damage to historic heritage; or
(f) damage to the habitats of fisheries resources of significance to customary, commercial or recreational users; or
(g) damage to sites of significance to tangata whenua; might result.

Council regulates vehicles on beaches\(^{20}\) to ensure legitimate and necessary access is identified and protected but unnecessary, damaging and dangerous use is prevented. If you intend to use vehicles on a beach you will need written permission from Auckland Council. If granted permission to use vehicles on a beach, production companies must only use designated access ways to the beach and may not access the foredune area or top of the dune. Successful filming proposals that involve the use of vehicles on beaches will be subject to extra conditions to ensure that:

- where possible the use of vehicles is avoided;
- the number of vehicles allowed under the permit conditions is the minimum necessary;
- vehicle use is highly controlled so as to prevent environmental damage and to protect public safety;
- all additional health and safety obligations are met;

\(^{20}\) Auckland Council Public Safety and Nuisance Bylaw

Draft Auckland Film Protocol
• members of the public who are witness to the film shoot are made aware, that a permit is required, of the conditions of the shoot and the controls placed upon it.

Screen Auckland, through regular communication with council’s parks team and with respect to Policy 20(1), can advise which beaches are most suitable to accommodate each filming proposal’s particular requirements.

4.3.7 Filming on the water
The Auckland Harbourmaster’s office, a unit of Auckland Transport, is responsible for ensuring maritime safety on all navigable waters within the Auckland Region.

If you plan to film on or in the water, you must inform Screen Auckland. If filming affects the normal operation of other recreational or commercial vessels or water users in an area where you plan to film the Harbourmaster will need to be notified and, depending on the level of disruption, the approval of the Harbourmaster may be required.

Filming which takes place on navigable waters within Auckland, including rivers, streams, lakes and harbours, must comply with Maritime rules and Auckland Council navigation safety bylaws. If proposed filming does not comply with a navigational bylaw you may apply to the Harbourmaster for an uplift of a bylaw or apply to temporarily reserve water space for an activity. Exemptions will be determined on a case-by-case basis, taking into account the effects on navigation safety with respect to the activity.

4.3.8 Filming on other council owned open space
Typical conditions for filming on public open space that are not parks include:

• no vehicles are permitted to drive or park on grass or pedestrian areas without prior written approval from council;
• nothing may be fixed or attached to trees or heritage items without prior written approval from council;
• structures generally need to be freestanding;
• earthworks are not permitted without prior written approval from council;
• all equipment must be stored tidily and cable ramps must be used for pedestrian safety when cables cross footpaths and pedestrian use areas.

4.3.9 Timeframes for filming on parks and other council owned open space
Depending on impact, most applications can be turned around within 3 to 5 working days. This may be slightly longer for film shoots on regional parks or high impact shoots in high use areas. Major impact filming can take significantly longer as it is likely to require pre-application meetings, site visits and extensive consultation. Screen Auckland will be able to advise in the first instance.
4.3.10 Helicopters
If you plan to use a helicopter when filming you will need to obtain permission, except in an emergency, to pick up or drop-off an item or person and to land or take-off from a public place (including parks and beaches\textsuperscript{21}).

You will also need to comply with New Zealand civil aviation rules, the Health and Safety at Work Act 2015 and with the Auckland Unitary Plan and Hauraki Gulf Islands District Plan. Under some circumstances you may require a resource consent, for example, if you exceed noise levels in the Auckland Unitary Plan when landing or taking-off. Screen Auckland will be able to advise in the first instance.

4.3.11 Remotely Piloted Aircraft Systems (drones)
If you plan to use a remotely piloted aircraft system (RPAS), also known as, unmanned aerial vehicles (UAVs), unmanned aircraft systems (UAS) or as drones, when filming anywhere in Auckland you must comply with New Zealand civil aviation rules and you must advise Screen Auckland.

New Zealand civil aviation rules require you to obtain the approval of a landowner, including private landowners, to operate a drone over their land. You will need permission to use a drone over public space, maunga, roads or footpaths, or over any property or building owned or managed by Auckland Council or a Council Controlled Organisation, for commercial purposes such as filming. If you intend to use a drone for commercial or organised filming in a public open space you will need a permit and as part of the permit process Screen Auckland can assist with obtaining landowner permission to use a drone for commercial purposes.

Using drones for commercial and organised filming can pose a risk to our native species and other animals and can result in risks to or concern from other users of public open space and neighbouring properties. Production companies must ensure that drones are used safely and must be respectful of wildlife, members of the public, and other users of the open space when using a drone.

In some locations and or during some times of year the use of drones may be restricted to avoid harm to native species such as birds.

Please note: Auckland Council Regional Parks, Auckland Transport and Panuku Development Auckland\textsuperscript{22} only grant permission to film, over or around properties that they manage, for commercial purposes to operators of drones with Part 102 certification from the Civil Aviation Authority. Part 102 certification may be required in local parks and other areas of public open space.

Once permission to use a drone for commercial or organised filming in a public open space has been obtained, you must be aware of and must:

- comply with all New Zealand civil aviation rules and requirements regarding the use of drones. Further information on New Zealand civil aviation rules can be found at https://www.caa.govt.nz/rpas/. Note that some areas in Auckland are "controlled

\textsuperscript{21} Auckland Council Public Safety and Nuisance Bylaw
\textsuperscript{22} If granted permission to use a drone for filming over a property managed by Panuku Development Auckland you may be required to use an approved drone operator.
airspace” and specific restrictions apply to these areas. For further information on controlled airspace see https://www.airshare.co.nz/maps.

- be courteous to and respect the privacy of other users, comply with Auckland Council bylaws and with any other conditions or guidelines issued by Auckland Council or a Council Controlled Organisation in relation to the use of a drone.

- comply with Auckland Council’s Code of conduct for use of drones and UAVs. The requirements of the Code of conduct include, but are not limited to, drones must not:
  - operate within 20 metres of or be flown over other users of the park;
  - fly over or within 50 metres of livestock on parks, sensitive wildlife habitats such as wetlands, or nesting or roosting birds;
  - fly over adjoining private properties.

A full copy of the Code of conduct for use of drones and UAVs can be found at https://www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz/code-of-conduct-use-drones-uavs.aspx.

Where native birds are present at a film location, permission to film may be subject to additional conditions to ensure the potential impact of drone use is managed and production companies should:

- abandon contact at the first sign of any bird being disturbed;
- land drones at a safe distance away if a bird circles or otherwise interacts with a drone in flight;
- be aware that it is an offence under the Wildlife Act 1953 to disturb or harm protected birds.

4.4 Filming on or in other properties and buildings owned by Auckland Council or Council Controlled Organisations

Auckland Council, either directly or through Council Controlled Organisations, own and/or manage a number of properties and buildings that may at times be of interest to the screen production industry. Properties directly owned and managed by Auckland Council include a number of community centres, halls, swimming pools and libraries.

Other spaces are managed by council controlled organisations, for example spaces such as stadiums, and MOTAT are managed by Regional Facilities Auckland23 while the waterfront and a number of commercial properties are managed by Panuku Development Auckland. These assets are subject to a variety of different governance structures and as such have different processes, timeframes and prices relating to filming. However, as the Auckland Council film protocol is a council-wide protocol, there is an expectation that all areas of the wider council organisation adhere to the film-friendly objectives and core commitments of this document, and will cooperate with filming requests whenever possible.

If you are unsure who manages the property you are interested in filming on, or want to film on properties directly managed by Auckland Council, Screen Auckland’s film facilitation team can assist with applying to film in or on all these facilities.

---

23 For a list of the properties managed by Regional Facilities Auckland - Go to Regional Facilities Auckland’s website http://www.rfacl.co.nz click on 'Information', then on “RFA Facilities”.

Draft Auckland Film Protocol
4.4.1 Filming on the city waterfront and other properties managed by Panuku Development Auckland

Much of the land on Auckland’s city based waterfront is owned and managed by Panuku Development Auckland, a council controlled organisation. Panuku Development Auckland welcomes filming and has experience working with Screen Auckland and the screen production industry, however, due to local industry operating in the area, filming may not always be possible on some sites. Screen Auckland will be able to advise in the first instance.

Panuku Development Auckland also manages a range of other properties across Auckland and applications to film on these properties will be considered on a case-by-case basis.

Depending on impact, applications for filming on Panuku Development Auckland can usually be turned around in 3 to 5 working days. However, in the case of high impact film shoots, timeframes can be significantly longer.

Additional charges will apply for filming on property that isn’t openly accessible to the public, contact Screen Auckland for further information.

4.4.2 Ports of Auckland

Ports of Auckland are part of a Council Controlled Organisation and own and operate out of a number of sites on Auckland’s waterfront including Princes, Marsden and Captain Cook Wharves.

Ports of Auckland may consider are open to filming requests but there are significant operational and safety issues that need to be considered. Anyone wishing to film should contact the Port to discuss their project at an early stage, and each proposal will be considered on a case by case basis. Charges for filming will vary according to the scale and nature of the project. Further information An application to film is also available on the Ports of Auckland website24.

4.4.3 Watercare

Watercare is a Council Controlled Organisation that provides water and wastewater services to the Auckland Region, and is responsible for a number of dams, waterways and treatment plants dotted throughout Auckland. Some of these areas are open to the public, and others are subject to high degrees of security.

Watercare are open to filming requests and are committed to a co-operative working relationship with Screen Auckland, but have significant health and safety and liability concerns that need to be satisfied in order for filming to go ahead on their property.

Production companies are encouraged to approach Screen Auckland in the first instance, who may be able to use their experience to assist with making an approach to Watercare that addresses these concerns. In instances where Watercare are

---

24 http://paed.co.nz/media/filming-permit

Draft Auckland Film Protocol 36
unable to accommodate a request for filming, Screen Auckland will work with production companies to identify an alternative site.

Depending on impact, applications for filming on Watercare property will normally be turned around in 10 working days. In the case of high to major impact film shoots, this can be significantly longer. Charges for filming on Watercare property will be confirmed on application.

### 4.5 Filming on public transport and public transport facilities

Auckland Transport has experience working with screen production companies and Screen Auckland, and can assist with filming in or on buses, bus stops, trains and train stations. Any filming activity at a public transport facility or on public transport infrastructure such as trains, buses, ferries, rail stations, bus terminals, bus stops and wharves will require formal approval from Auckland Transport. Many Aucklanders rely on public transport to get to and from work and school and to travel around Auckland; making reliable public transport services critical. Normal public transport operations and customer movements should not be interrupted by filming activity.

There are many potential hazards when filming in and around public transport and specific permits are required that identify these health and safety considerations.

#### 4.5.1 Filming on buses

The procedure and timeframes for filming on buses varies depending on type and impact. For media style minor impact filming on scheduled urban services, production companies can contact the media liaison team within Auckland Transport and sometimes approval can be turned around within one working day.

Scheduled filming activity of a low, medium or high impact will need to occur on hired buses and production companies should contact the bus company directly to arrange this; contact details are available on the Auckland Transport website. Unless the filming activity occurring on the bus is carried out entirely on private land, the production company will need to talk to Screen Auckland about film permitting requirements including traffic management. If filming is carried out entirely on public private land, film permits can generally be turned around within 3 to 5 working days. However, screen production companies should give two weeks’ notice to allow for liaison between bus operators and Auckland Transport.

Filming activity that will disrupt the public transport network can take up to one month to allow for planning meetings, site visits and passenger communication.

#### 4.5.2 Filming on trains

Screen production companies seeking to film on trains should contact Screen Auckland in the first instance. Screen Auckland will work with Auckland Transport to consider filming requests.

---


Draft Auckland Film Protocol 37
Depending on impact and associated health and safety issues, lead time for filming on trains can vary dramatically. To film on trains, screen production companies will require permits from Auckland Transport and Transdev; for this reason, three weeks are required to process applications. Filming proposals that require a large crew or will have a high impact on regular train operations will take longer to process. Screen Auckland will do their best to signal to production companies how long their application will take to process at the outset.

4.5.3 Filming in public transport facilities
Any filming in a bus or train station, ferry terminal or on footpaths in or around bus stops/train stations or ferry terminals requires a film permit and will incur costs. In these areas, safety considerations are paramount and production companies can expect conditions that reflect this (such as crew having to wear high visibility vests). You should allow at least 10 working days for your application to be processed.

4.5.4 Costs
Auckland Transport may seek reimbursement for direct costs, related to disruptions to the public transport network and access to public transport facilities. For example, for costs associated with Transport Ambassadors, where major bus stop relocations are required, and security staff.

4.6 Health and safety considerations
Health and Safety in New Zealand workplaces is regulated by the Health & Safety at Work Act 2015, which promotes health and safety management in the workplace and focuses on the prevention of harm to employees at work. The Health and Safety at Work Act applies to international productions while they are working in New Zealand.

Everyone has a role to play in making sure New Zealand workplaces are safe and healthy. Your obligations, under the Health and Safety at Work Act, will depend on your role in the production process, including the amount of control and influence you have over any aspect of the project. The more senior your role or the more influence you have, the more responsibility you will have for ensuring the safety of yourself and others.

In addition to the requirements of the Health and Safety at Work Act 2015, all film crews must comply with the ScreenSafe Health and Safety Guidelines and guidance on best-practice processes for the engagement of crew in the New Zealand screen production industry as outlined in the 2017 Blue Book and Auckland Council bylaws.

You will also be required to comply with any specific health and safety requirements or instructions set out in, or issued in conjunction with, your film permit.

4.6.1 Site specific health and safety plan
As part of your application for a film permit, you will be required to provide Screen Auckland with a site specific health and safety plan and general crew safety notes for

---

26 Transdev operates passenger rail services on behalf of Auckland Transport, delivering approximately 3,300 services each week and over 20 million annual passenger journeys.
review. Your site specific health and safety plan should be submitted to Screen Auckland at the same time as your application for a film permit. Where this is not possible you must provide your site specific health and safety plan to Screen Auckland at least 3 working days prior to your intended date of filming. Under some circumstances and only by agreement with Screen Auckland, it may be possible to submit your site specific health and safety plan to Screen Auckland a minimum of 2 working days prior to your intended date of filming.

The level of site specific health and safety plan required and the timeframe for review will vary depending on your activity proposal and proposed location. Some sites, such as closed landfills which are now used as parks, are considered higher risk than other sites. Higher risk sites may be subject to additional conditions and requirements; for example a site induction may also be necessary and this will require additional time. When developing your site specific health and safety plan, you should consider key risk areas such as cabling, structures, towers, stunts and use of hazardous substances.

To ensure you have sufficient time for your site specific health and safety plan to be reviewed contact Screen Auckland for preliminary advice.

A film permit will not be issued without a reviewed site specific health and safety plan.

4.7 Heritage considerations

Historic heritage reinforces our sense of history, belonging, identity and place. Historic heritage places are likely to have specific restrictions on their use that may impact on timeframes and costs. This will be pointed out by Screen Auckland’s film facilitation team at the point of initial inquiry, and assistance will be given to mitigate effects or locate an alternative site if necessary.

Historic heritage places can include historic buildings, archaeological sites, places of significance to Māori and notable trees. Some historic heritage places are protected by legislation\(^{27}\). Some historic heritage places are protected in the Auckland Unitary Plan\(^{28}\).

Depending on the nature of the proposal, resource consent may be required for filming on sites protected in the Auckland Unitary Plan. An Authority from Heritage New Zealand may be required for proposals that take place on archaeological sites. Information on places protected in the Auckland Unitary Plan can be found on the Auckland Council website\(^{29}\). The types of issues for filmmakers to consider in relation to sites that are significant to Māori include, but are not necessarily limited to:

- the use of indigenous knowledge and any reference to iwi;
- misuse or misappropriation of iwi history, stories or legends;

---

\(^{27}\) All pre-1900 archaeological sites, recorded and unrecorded, are protected by the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014.

\(^{28}\) For example in the Historic Heritage Schedule (Schedule 14.1) and the Sites and Places of Significance to Mana Whenua Schedule (Schedule 12).

\(^{29}\) Go to [www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz/heritage](http://www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz/heritage)
• inappropriate representation or use of culturally significant images or sites; this can include, but is not limited to, the subject of filming or the depiction of the site (e.g. digitally adapting the appearance of a site in a way that is considered inappropriate).
• use of culturally significant sites including maunga, marae and places included in the Sites and Places of Significance to Mana Whenua schedule in the Auckland Unitary Plan.

4.8 Resource consent considerations

Due to the often temporary nature of filming, a resource consent is not usually required to carry out filming within Auckland. However, filming projects involving the long-term use of the same site are much more likely to require a resource consent.

Resource consent criteria are currently determined by the Auckland Unitary Plan and the Hauraki Gulf Islands District Plan. Go to the Auckland Council website to view the Auckland Unitary Plan and the Hauraki Gulf Islands District Plan maps and other information.35

Screen Auckland’s film facilitation team can assist with providing contact details for planning staff who have experience working with the screen production industry.

4.8.1 Filming as a temporary activity

The length of time filming can occur without a resource consent currently varies depending on the area. Please see table 5 for a summary. Contact Screen Auckland for further information.

Table 4 Regional variances relating to filming as a temporary activity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Areas of the Auckland Region</th>
<th>Length of time filming can occur without a resource consent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Auckland Region (except the Hauraki Gulf Islands)</td>
<td>Up to, and including, thirty consecutive days.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiheke Island</td>
<td>Up to five days, including the time required for establishing and removing all temporary buildings and structures associated with the event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filming is permitted as a temporary activity in all land units, except landforms 1 (coastal cliffs), 2 (sand flats only) and 4 (wetland systems), island residential 1 and 2 and on any scheduled item(s) and its scheduled site surrounds.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great Barrier Island</td>
<td>Up to six days. Temporary buildings and structures associated with filming may not occupy the venue for more than 14 days, including the time required for establishing and removing all temporary buildings and structures.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filming is permitted as a temporary activity in all land units and settlement areas, except landforms 1 (coastal cliffs), 2 (sand flats only) and 4 (wetland systems) and on any scheduled item(s) and its scheduled site surrounds.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

35 Go to [http://www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz](http://www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz) click on “Plans, polices, bylaws, reports and projects”, then click on either “The Auckland Unitary Plan” or on the “Hauraki Gulf Islands District Plan” to read the plans or view the relevant planning maps.

Draft Auckland Film Protocol 40
4.8.2 Filming as a permanent activity
In principle, filming is permitted to take place as a permanent activity within some areas of the Auckland Region. It is important to note however, that this is subject to the ability to meet with a range of other requirements in the Auckland Unitary Plan. If you are considering filming on a semi-permanent or permanent basis from a specific site, please contact council at the earliest opportunity to discuss potential constraints and consent requirements. Screen Auckland can assist with putting you in touch with the appropriate contact.

4.8.3 Possible triggers for resource consents
The following site-related issues are likely to trigger the need for a resource consent:
- excessive lighting;
- excessive noise;
- excessive earthworks;
- removal of protected vegetation;
- close proximity to the coast or other waterbodies;
- close proximity to residential zones;
- inadequate carparking capacity;
- absence of a loading bay;
- the amount of traffic generated;
- heritage related issues;
- hours of operation;
- exceeding the days for a temporary activity or other standards that apply to permitted activities.

4.8.4 Timeframe and cost implications for resource consent applications
If an applicant does require a resource consent to film, council advises that they should engage a planning consultant to assist with their application. Having a pre-application meeting with relevant stakeholders is also strongly advised, as this will greatly increase the likelihood of a thorough application being lodged from the outset and being processed as efficiently as possible. Assuming the application is complete, the council undertakes to assess resource consent applications within 20 working days. Council planners will be able to provide a more specific undertaking of processing timeframes and processing costs at a pre-application meeting or at the time of application, once they have become familiar with the proposal.

If the resource consent needs to be notified, the timeframe increases significantly to 70 or more working days.

Non-notified and relatively simple resource consent applications typically cost $4000 to $6000. Note, resource consent charges include GST and are subject to change. This cost represents the council charges relating to the processing of a resource consent. It does not include charges incurred for the use of external planning consultants by applicants or the payment of development contributions, if these are
required. A pre-application meeting is the most efficient way of reducing processing costs. If a resource consent requires notification, this cost can increase significantly.

Visit Auckland Council’s website for application forms and more information on resource consents, including up-to-date information about council charges.²¹

### 4.9 Building consent considerations

Auckland Council recognises the uniqueness of the screen production industry and its building requirements which frequently have an ill fit with the requirements of the Building Act 2004.

In order to assist the screen industry, Auckland Council may, at its discretion and within its statutory powers as defined in schedule 1, clause (2) of the Building Act 2004, exempt particular temporary film sets from requiring building consents.

#### 4.9.1 Definition of temporary film set

For the purposes of this policy, a ‘temporary film set’ is defined as:

> “a building or buildings erected solely to facilitate filming (including but not limited to facades, fences, lean-tos, sheds, cottages, and other similar building work), that are not intended for permanent use or occupation”.

Any person undertaking building works outside the specific “temporary film set” building works defined in this policy must obtain either an exemption from building consent or a full building consent prior to commencing the works.

#### 4.9.2 Temporary film sets in place for ten days or less

Application for an exemption from building consent is not required for the first ten days of a “temporary film set” being in place (including the commencement of the building work and the deconstruction of the set/wrap out), provided they meet the following criteria:

- the building work meets the definition of “temporary film set” and is on private property; or,
- the building work meets the definition of “temporary film set,” is on public open space and less than five metres in height and secure and isolated from the public during this period.

²¹ [http://www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz](http://www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz), click on “Building and consents”, then on “The building and consents process”, then on “Apply for a consent”, then either click on “Apply for a building consent” for further information on building consent fees, or on “Apply for a resource consent” for further information on resource consent fees.
4.9.3 All other temporary film sets
All other “temporary film sets” are required to apply to Auckland Council for an exemption from building consent. Applications for an exemption from building consent will be processed by Auckland Council as a matter of priority within two to three working days providing the engineer involved with the project submits a Producer Statement.

Screen production companies can expect the outcome of the application to be favourable in the case of temporary film sets that meet the following criteria.

- any building work that meets the definition of “temporary film set” and is on private property;
- any building work that meets the definition of “temporary film set,” is on public open space, less than five metres in height and secure and isolated from the public.

If Auckland Council refuses to grant an exemption, which will generally be based on the scale and/or permanence of the building work, the applicant will be required to obtain building consent and must not commence works until consent has been granted. Council’s statutory timeframe for processing building consents is 20 working days.

4.9.4 Multiple temporary film sets built in a secure film studio space
Production companies planning on building multiple temporary film sets in a secure film studio space should inform council so discussions can be had on how to provide an efficient service.

4.9.5 Costs
At the time of writing, it costs $453 to apply for a building consent exemption. It costs between $788 and $6348 to apply for a building consent, depending on the value and complexity of the building project. Any further charges are based on an hourly rate of $105 to $198 per hour. Note, building consent fees quoted include GST and are subject to change. Visit Auckland Council’s website for application forms and more information on building consents, including up-to-date information about council charges.

4.9.6 Important notes - Please note:

- For the purposes of this policy, Auckland Council considers that the provisions of the Health and Safety at Work Act 2015, and the insurance requirements of each individual operator or Film Production Company, are relevant to the extent that they require the company to act lawfully.
- A structural engineering overview for the proposed construction is advisable where the size or complexity of set construction warrants it.
- Film production companies will still need to seek approval from landowners (public or private) to construct film sets on their land. In the case of filming on private property, if an application for an exemption or building consent is required only the landowner or their agent can be the applicant. In the case of filming in public open space within Auckland, this will be managed through Screen Auckland’s film permitting process.
4.10 Planning for additional requirements - The use of special effects, firearms and stunts

Screen production companies intending to use special effects (including weather effects and any type of pyrotechnic) or firearms, or seeking to perform stunts involving vehicles, will be subject to additional levels of scrutiny which has the potential to impact on timeframes. In some instances, further consultation with the fire service and police will be required, as well as a site specific health and safety plan. Screen Auckland will be able to advise in the first instance.

Assessment of permit applications where special effects are planned will also consider the potential impact on the environment and wildlife. This may mean that it is not possible to use special effects in some locations or that usage in some locations may be restricted during certain times of the year.

4.10.1 Pyrotechnics

The New Zealand Fire Service has a number of requirements relating to the use of pyrotechnics and should be contacted by the screen production company as early as possible. Screen Auckland may be able to assist with making the appropriate contact within the fire service.

4.10.2 Weather effects

Wet downs, rain and snow effects may be carried out with the permission of the landowner. Screen Auckland’s film facilitation team can assist you with seeking landowner permission. Where permission is granted to use these types of special effects, they must be undertaken in a safe and ecologically friendly way to ensure that the environment and wildlife are protected from any harmful effects.

When using these types of special effects production companies must:

- avoid sensitive environmental areas;
- use biodegradable non-toxic products, except by agreement with Screen Auckland;
- consider weather and wind conditions when designing and executing these effects;
- ensure the containment, clean-up and removal of all products used for this purpose.

Auckland Council may place additional conditions on film permits where these types of special effects are being used during filming. Screen Auckland can also work with council to facilitate the responsible use of public water for this purpose.

4.10.3 Firearms

The New Zealand Police has a number of requirements relating to the use of firearms for the purposes of filming, including the use of a certified armourer, and should be contacted by the screen production company as early as possible. Screen Auckland may be able to assist with making the appropriate contact within the police.
4.10.4 Stunts using vehicles
New Zealand Police has a number of requirements relating to the use of stunt vehicles (such as in car crash scenes), including the use of certified stunt drivers. The screen production company should contact the police as early as possible to discuss planned stunts. Screen Auckland may be able to assist with making the appropriate contact within the police.

4.10.5 Stunts with a “copy cat” risk
In order to avoid people copying stunts carried out for screen production purposes, Screen Auckland’s film facilitation team will be able to assist with identifying locations where the risk of “copy cats” occurring is reduced.
5 Glossary

Building consent - Council permission to carry out building work that it considers will comply with the Building Code provided the work is completed in accordance with the plans and specifications submitted with the building consent application.

Bylaw – A rule made by a local authority that requires people, when in a public place, to either do something (e.g. get permission to film in a public place) or not do something (e.g. recklessly fly a drone).

City Centre – This term refers to the city centre of Auckland (also sometimes referred to as the CBD, Central Business District and Central Area). This is the area that falls within the urban motorway system and the harbour edge.

Council-controlled organisation (CCO) – A CCO is a company or organisation in which one or more local authorities control 50 per cent of more of the directors (or trustees) of the company or organisation.

Hauraki Gulf Islands District Plan – the rulebook for how council manages the use of natural and physical resources of the Hauraki Gulf Islands. The Plan contains policies and rules for activities and development on the islands.

Essential vehicles – vehicles used for the purpose of the filming activity rather than just transport, such as lighting, camera, generator, department trucks, vans and or utes.

Filming - The act or period of photographing moving images, be it digitally, on tape, or on film stock, for broadcast on television, in movie theatres or for internal corporate, educational or private use.

Film permit/permit – Permission to carry out filming activity within the Auckland Region. Film permits are subject to conditions.

Location Assistants - assistant to the Location Manager, hired to be on-set at all times before, during and after the filming activity takes place. Location assistants are there to liaise with the public, direct the crew where to park and set-up, and ultimately to make sure the crew and cast are making as minimal impact on the location as possible.

Recce - ‘Recce’ is a military term borrowed by the industry to mean a pre-filming visit to a location, to assess the suitability of the location in terms of logistical and technical issues.

Resource consent – Council permission to carry out an activity that is restricted or controlled by the rules set out in the Auckland Unitary Plan and Hauraki Gulf Islands district plan. Resource consents are subject to conditions.

Screen Auckland Reserved Parking document (SARP) - This document outlines the operational requirements for film productions who wish to reserve...
parking areas for film activities within the road corridor across the Auckland region.

Traffic management plan or TMP – is a plan for managing temporary changes to traffic (including pedestrian) flows.

Unitary plan – The Auckland Unitary Plan is the rulebook for how Auckland’s natural and physical resources are used. The Unitary Plan contains rules around how different areas in Auckland may be used, including what type of activities you can use land or buildings for temporarily or on a permanent basis.
6 Related policies, publications and websites

Economic Development Strategy
Auckland’s economic development strategy sets out a vision for an economy that delivers opportunity and prosperity for all Aucklanders and New Zealand. To deliver this Auckland needs to have an internationally competitive, prosperous economy that all Aucklanders can benefit from and participate in. Auckland’s Economic Development Strategy sets out the tangible steps we will follow to make this happen.


Screen Auckland website
Screen Auckland’s objective is to ensure the screen industry’s production experience in and around the Auckland Region is seamless. They are the first point of contact for the screen production industry, and can assist with identifying locations and tapping into Auckland and New Zealand’s vast network of experienced and innovative Film Industry professionals.

www.aucklandnz.com/screen

New Zealand Film Commission
New Zealand Film Commission is New Zealand’s national film office, providing information, introductions and support to filmmakers, both internationally and nationally.

www.filmnz.com

ScreenSafe
ScreenSafe supports and promotes health and safety in the New Zealand Screen Sector. ScreenSafe is an industry-wide collaborative effort with backing from the New Zealand Film Commission, New Zealand On Air and Screen Production and Development Association along with other guilds, industry bodies and regional film offices.

http://screensafe.co.nz/

WorkSafe
WorkSafe is New Zealand’s primary workplace health and safety regulator. WorkSafe provides a range of information and guidance about health and safety requirements in New Zealand.

https://worksafe.govt.nz/
Civil Aviation Authority
The Civil Aviation Authority regulates civil aviation in New Zealand. If you undertaking aerial filming, then you must comply with CAA regulations. The CAA checks that these rules are being complied with and have the power to take action if they are not. The CAA also monitors safety and security performance throughout the aviation community so that they can direct safety efforts where they are needed most. The CAA also produce safety publications and run safety seminars for the aviation community.
https://www.caa.govt.nz/

The Advertising Standards Authority
The Advertising Standards Authority is an industry funded organisation supporting standards in advertising; it provides a range of guidance notes and codes of practice. Its prime function is to self-regulate advertising in New Zealand.
http://www.asa.co.nz/

The Broadcasting Standards Authority
The Broadcasting Standards Authority is an independent Crown entity responsible for overseeing the broadcasting standards regime in New Zealand. It provides a range of guidance and information about broadcasting standards in New Zealand.
https://bsa.govt.nz/

Department of Conservation – filming on public conservation land
To film anything for commercial purposes on public conservation land you must be granted a concession from the Department of Conservation (DOC). Further information on the concession application process, timeframes, costs and the DOC Code of Practice for film crews undertaking activities on public conservation land is available on the DOC website.

Heritage New Zealand
Heritage New Zealand has responsibilities for archaeological sites under the Heritage NZ Pouhere Taonga Act 2014. Archaeological sites are defined as any place in New Zealand including any building or structure that was associated with human activity that occurred before 1800. Modification of an archaeological site is prohibited, unless permission is obtained from Heritage NZ.
http://www.heritage.org.nz/
7 Key New Zealand Legislation

The New Zealand Legislation website - [www.legislation.govt.nz](http://www.legislation.govt.nz) - is the official government website and provides free access to up-to-date electronic versions of New Zealand legislation. Click on the hyperlinks below to directly access an Act, or go to the website and use the easy search engine to find the legislation you are looking for.

The following list sets out key legislation referred to in this document. The list is provided for information only and is not a complete or inclusive list of legislation that you should be aware of when filming in New Zealand.

**Animal Welfare Act 1999** - sets out the obligation of animal owners or people in charge of animals to meet an animal's physical, health, and behavioural needs, and alleviate pain or distress.

**Building Act 2004** - sets out the rules for the construction, alteration, demolition and maintenance of new and existing buildings and structures in New Zealand.

**Dog Control Act 1996** – provides the framework under which councils regulate the control of dogs in their area including where dogs may be exercised off-leash, where dogs must be kept on a leash and where dogs are prohibited.

**Employment Relations Act 2000** - provides the legal framework for all relationships between employees, employers and unions.

**Health and Safety at Work Act 2015** - is New Zealand’s workplace health and safety law. Breaches of the Health and Safety at Work Act are investigated and enforced by WorkSafe New Zealand.

**Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014** - promotes the identification, protection, preservation, and conservation of the historical and cultural heritage of New Zealand.

**Local Government Act 2002** - provides the framework and powers under which councils operate; including enabling councils to make and enforce bylaws to protect the public from nuisance, to protect, promote and maintain public health and safety, and to minimise the potential for offensive behaviour in public places.

**Local Government Act 1974** – enables the temporary closure of a road for the purpose of film-making or events.

**Local Government (Auckland Council) Act 2009** – established Auckland Council and sets out matters, in relation to Auckland Council’s structure, functions, duties and powers, that differ from those which apply generally to councils under the Local Government Act 2002.

**Maritime Transport Act 1994** - sets out the legal framework for maritime safety and protection of the marine environment. Allows councils to regulate, through a bylaw, certain activities for the purpose of ensuring maritime safety.
Nga Mana Whenua o Tamaki Makaurau Collective Redress Act 2014 – restored ownership of certain maunga and motu of Tāmaki Makaurau, as part of a Treaty of Waitangi settlement, to Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau (the collective group of the 13 iwi and hapū of Auckland). The Act also established the Tūpuna Maunga o Tāmaki Makaurau Authority.

Resource Management Act 1991 – regulations how the environment is managed. As well as managing air, soil, fresh water and coastal marine areas, the RMA regulates how and for what types of activities land may be used.

Smoke-free Environments Act 1990 – regulates smoking in workplaces, on public transport, in cafes, restaurants and in certain public places. Regulates the marketing, advertising and promotion of tobacco products and the sponsorship by tobacco companies of products services and events.

Waitākere Ranges Heritage Area Act 2008 - recognises the national, regional and local significance of the Waitākere Ranges Heritage Area and promotes the protection and enhancement of its heritage features for present and future generations. The objectives of the Act include to, but are not limited to, to:

- protect, restore and enhance the area for its heritage features;
- ensure that impacts on the area as a whole are considered when decisions are made affecting any part of it;
- to adopt a careful approach when considering decisions that threaten serious or irreversible damage to a heritage feature;
- to recognise and avoid adverse potential, or adverse cumulative, effects of activities on the area’s environment (including its amenity) or its heritage features;
- to maintain the quality and diversity of landscape in the area;
- to manage aquatic and terrestrial ecosystems in the area to protect and enhance indigenous habitat values, landscape values, and amenity values;
- to protect in perpetuity the natural and historic resources of the Waitākere Ranges Regional Park for their intrinsic worth and for the benefit, use and enjoyment of the people and communities of the Auckland Region and New Zealand.

Wildlife Act 1953 - outlines the protection and control of wild animals and birds and the management of game.
## Appendix One: Film permit application form

### Film permit application

Before you start please make sure you have the following information before proceeding with an application:

- Planned location(s)
- Schedule information, planned filming dates
- Shoot information, a thorough knowledge of action being filmed, including equipment to be used, crew and cast sizes
- Production details, on set contacts, company information
- Supporting information such as traffic management plans, public liability or consultation plans
- During the processing of this application you will also be asked for a health and safety / risk management plan.

### Production title:

- [ ] Commercial
- [ ] Music video
- [ ] Online
- [ ] Travel show
- [ ] Other (please describe)
- [ ] Still photography
- [ ] Feature film
- [ ] Web series
- [ ] Short film
- [ ] Corporate video
- [ ] Student
- [ ] Television series
- [ ] Documentary

### Production origin:

- [ ] Domestic (NZ)
- [ ] International (please describe)

### Location(s):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Film start date:</th>
<th>Bump-in time:</th>
<th>Film start time:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Film finish date:</td>
<td>Film finish time:</td>
<td>Bump-out time:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contingency start date:</td>
<td>Contingency finish date:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Shoot selection (what kind of filming activity is planned):

- [ ] On location filming
- [ ] Unit base only

### Description of the action being filmed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No. of crew:</th>
<th>No. of talent:</th>
<th>No. of extras:</th>
<th>No. of client/agency:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Are you using any specific filming equipment other than a camera and tripod?

- [ ] Yes
- [ ] No

If yes, please select those that apply:

- [ ] Dolly and track, slider
- [ ] Camera crane
- [ ] Lighting e.g. LED, lights on stands
- [ ] Frames, stands, reflector boards
- [ ] Cherry picker, knuckle boom, scissor lift, merit
- [ ] Scaffold tower
- [ ] Flats
- [ ] Generator
- [ ] Other (please describe)

Any special effects such as rain, snow, haze, or wet down:

- [ ] Yes
- [ ] No

If yes, please specify:

### Water access (action in/on sea, harbour or waterway):

- [ ] Yes
- [ ] No

If yes, please specify:

Use or appearance of fake weapons and/or violence, depiction of drug use, actor’s impersonation of police officers or other emergency services or nudity:

- [ ] Yes
- [ ] No

If yes, please specify:

### Any animals:

- [ ] Yes
- [ ] No

If yes, please specify type of animal and how many:

### Set dressing scenery of props:

- [ ] Yes
- [ ] No

If yes, please specify:

### Security company name and contact (if applicable):

### Set construction required:

- [ ] Yes
- [ ] No
If yes, please specify:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fire effects, pyrotechnics, smoke effects, explosions:</th>
<th>Yes</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

If yes, please specify:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use of a drone:</th>
<th>Yes</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What model of drone/total weight if required:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Company/operator name:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use of aircraft (other than a drone) or helicopter:</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If yes, please specify:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Music playback or noise disturbance e.g. amplified sound:</th>
<th>Yes</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

If yes, please specify:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Do you have a Health and Safety Specialist:</th>
<th>Yes</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

If yes, please provide company name, number and email:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gate or special access. E.g. boilard unlock, facility unlock e.g. toilets (please provide detail and show on your site map):</th>
<th>Yes</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

If yes, please specify:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Access start date:</th>
<th>Access start time:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Access end date:</td>
<td>Access end time:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity on the road e.g. tracking vehicles, moving cars, low loaders, picture vehicles:</th>
<th>Yes</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Types and number of vehicles:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cars:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Are there any vehicles arriving or departing/other activity on or near the site between the hours of 10pm and 7am:</th>
<th>Yes</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

If yes, please specify:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Are there any business or residents nearby to your filming location:</th>
<th>Yes</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

If yes, please specify:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How are you planning on notifying affected parties:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Production company name:</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Email for invoice:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Production company address:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Location Manager:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key contact on set:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Producer:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Production Manager:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Please email application to your Film Facilitator or screen@aucklandnz.com along with the following supporting documents:

- Site map
- Parking plan
- letter drop draft
- Traffic management plan (if applicable)
- Health and safety risk management plan
- Drone operator certifications and variations
- Public liability insurance certificates
Small Print Terms & Conditions

9. Indemnity
In consideration of the grant of approval to use Auckland Council's facilities for the activity, the organiser shall indemnify Auckland Council and its CCOs against all costs, losses, claims, liabilities, proceedings, damages and expenses incurred and any loss or damage suffered by Auckland Council arising by reason of, or in connection with, the organiser's breach or non-performance of any obligations under any of these conditions, or statute or regulation.

10. Contacts
Prior to the activity the organiser shall ensure that they provide to Screen Auckland, the name and mobile number of a contact person onsite on the day of the activity.

11. Noise & Lighting
Noise and lighting should be kept to a minimum after 10pm and before 7am and must comply with the Auckland Unitary Plan noise levels and the requirements of the noise provisions of the Resource Management Act 1991. Failure to do so will potentially result in the filming activity being shut down or an infringement fine being issued.

12. Electricity
Where electricity is being used for an activity, the organiser shall utilise the services of a registered electrician to undertake the electrical work. All electrical equipment used must be in good and safe working order.

13. Compliance with Council Rules and Legislation
The film permit provides the organiser with limited permission to occupy public land for the approved purposes. The organiser is responsible for ensuring that all activities comply with the requirements of the Auckland Unitary Plan and various bylaws including, but not limited to the Trading & Events in Public Places Bylaw 2015 and the Public Safety & Nuisance Bylaw 2013.

14. Compliance with Directions
The organiser shall ensure that all participants immediately comply with any instructions or directions issued by NZ Police, Auckland Transport, Auckland Council officers or Worksafe NZ officers in the execution of their duties.

15. Access to Properties
The organiser shall ensure that access and egress for residents, businesses and emergency vehicles are available at all times, that the public is not unduly inconvenienced, and that public and private access ways are kept clear at all times.

16. Responsibility for Equipment
All equipment and structures used must be in good, safe working order. Following completion of the approved activity, the organiser shall remove all temporary structures, road markings, signs, rubbish bins, toilets, equipment, props or other structures or devices associated with the activity. Removal of such equipment shall take place immediately after the activity.

17. Responsibility for Clean Up
The organiser shall ensure that any area associated with the activity is left in a clean and tidy condition, including surrounding streets. The removal and disposal of all rubbish shall take place immediately after the activity.

18. No Damage to Property
The organiser shall ensure that all grounds, property, wildlife, stock, vegetation, buildings and other facilities are not damaged or unduly disturbed at any time during the activity or any set up or pack down period associated with it. Rectifying any damage to public property caused by the approved activity, is payable by the production company. The organiser must employ Council approved contractors to rectify any damage caused and to reimburse any damaged property.

19. No Fixtures
The organiser shall ensure that nothing is fixed, hung or otherwise attached to any features of the Park, Reserve, Square, Street or Facility (e.g. trees, street furniture, lamp-posts, etc.) without the prior consent of Auckland Council.

20. Documentation
The organiser shall ensure that a copy of the film permit is available at all times during the activity and any set up or pack down period associated with it.

21. No Identification of Location
The organiser shall ensure that filming within a public open space will not identify any Auckland Council locations, including but not limited to signs or logos, nor any uniquely identifiable physical or landscape aspect of the location.
22. Smoke Free
Auckland Council adopted a smoke-free policy in 2013 aimed at making public outdoor spaces smoke-free across the Auckland region. A smokefree city is part of the Auckland Plan. It aligns with the government's goal of becoming a smokefree nation by 2025. Further information can be found at https://www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz/plans-project-policies/report-by-laws/page/smoke-free-policy.aspx

23. Public Artworks
Incidental filming of public artwork is allowed as part of this permit. Interaction with any public art work is not approved with this permit and requires consultation and agreement with the artist.

24. Road Closures or Traffic Control
The organiser shall apply for any necessary road closure or traffic control authorisations in writing with adequate timeframes as required by the relevant transport authorities prior to the activity taking place.

25. Public Transport
If an approved activity involves a Traffic Management Plan and/or the rescheduling or relocation of bus stops which may affect public transport, the organiser, through Screen Auckland, shall contact and consult with Auckland Transport and any other relevant stakeholders, with adequate timeframes as required by the relevant transport authorities prior to the activity taking place.

26. Traffic Management Plan
The organiser shall provide to Screen Auckland a Traffic Management Plan with adequate timeframes prior to the activity. The Traffic Management Plan shall include the location of all relevant structures, equipment, facilities, assembly areas, event or filming areas and other facilities, including (without limitation) COTFIT compliant signs and cones, marshals, vehicles, parking restrictions, road closure details and access for the disabled, emergency vehicles and public transport. Auckland Council, Auckland Transport and the Police may require further details to be included in the Traffic Management Plan. Further details shall be provided to Screen Auckland as soon as practicable after any such request.

27. Marshals
The organiser shall provide suitably qualified and identifiable marshals to the satisfaction of Police, Auckland Transport and Auckland Council.

28. Compliance with Law and with NZ Police Directions
The organiser shall ensure that all participants comply with all traffic laws, regulations and bylaws at all times during the activity and that all participants comply immediately with any instructions issued by the NZ Police, Auckland Transport or Auckland Council officials in the execution of their duties.

29. Traffic Control Measures
The organiser shall ensure all appropriate barricades, cones and signs are provided and placed in accordance with the Traffic Management Plan. Such barriers, cones and signs shall be removed immediately after the activity.

30. Vehicle Movements
Filming activities fall within the category of specific Temporary activities under Auckland Unitary Plan 2016 Chapter E. rule E40. The organiser shall ensure that all participants comply with this at all times and in particular (but not exclusively): E40.4.1 (A15) & E40.6.2

31. Visibility
All crew to wear high visibility safety vests at all times around the road corridor.

Signage
32. The organiser is granted exemption to the Signage Bylaw 2015 as part of this permit, as per Part 1.7(a). This will allow the use of directional arrows that can be visible from the street, which may only be displayed with the use of ‘pigs tails’ or COTFIT compliant cones. These information arrows may only be placed on the footpath beam and only used to indicate the direction to your location. This exemption does not permit any attachment of signage to any regulatory signs, nor the signs to resemble the colour of any regulatory sign. All information arrows are to be no longer than 50cm in length.

Charges and Cancellations
33. Charges
The organiser shall pay to Auckland Council, for the services of Auckland Tourism Events and Economic Development Limited (ATEED), an activity fee in respect of the activity permit to which these conditions are attached. Other fees and Charges
The organiser shall be responsible for any fees or services and supply charges associated with the activity. These fees are payable in respect of any certificate, authority, approval, consent or service given or inspection made by Auckland Council or any department, service, agent or local authority trading enterprise of Auckland Council.

35. Bond
If required, the organiser shall provide to Screen Auckland, ATEED a bond prior to the activity. The purpose of the bond shall be to cover the potential costs of any breach of these conditions including the cost of repairing any damage and undertaking any clean up work that the organiser has not done. The bond shall be on terms satisfactory to Auckland Council having regard to the nature of the activity.

36. Road Closure Advertisements
The organiser shall be responsible for the costs of the public notices to advertise any closure of roads associated with the activity.

37. Cancellation Fee
Screen Auckland, ATEED may charge a cancellation fee if the organiser of the activity cancels a booking prior to the commencement of the activity or if the organiser fails to notify Screen Auckland of any cancellation.

38. Late Application Fee
Screen Auckland may charge a late application fee if an application is received within 2 working days of the activity. The organiser shall be advised upon application if this fee is to be applied.

Special Conditions
39. The organiser will be advised of any special conditions associated with the nature of the activity prior to the activity taking place.

40. Drones
Users of UAVs need to follow the Civil Aviation Authority rules on the use of UAVs. UAV Operators must comply with the Auckland Council Public Safety and Noise Bylaw 2013. In addition to this Bylaw, when flying in a public open space, operators should adhere to the Auckland Council code of conduct which can be found online http://temp.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz/En/ParksFacilities/ParksandRecreation/Pages/rules.aspx

41. Sites of Significance
The organiser, through Screen Auckland, shall contact and consult with relevant stakeholders on behalf of the production with adequate timeframes prior to the activity involving any sites of significance including but not limited to Turepuna Maunga, and sites with historic and archaeological heritage.

42. Closed landfill sites
Auckland Council is responsible for the management of a number of closed landfill and contaminated sites. Legal obligations exist under the Health Act & Local Government Act to minimise the risk to public health & safety. If any filming activity is on one of these sites the organiser shall apply for the necessary authorisations in writing with adequate timeframes prior to the activity taking place.

Note
43. Advice to Services
During the consultation process, Screen Auckland will, where applicable, advise the following services: NZ Police, NZ Fire Service, St John Ambulance, relevant transport companies, and Auckland Transport.

44. After Hours Contacts
Should you have any concerns or queries on the day of your activity, please contact your Film Facilitator or Auckland Council after hours, phone 09 301 0101. The Auckland Council Call Centre will forward your query to an appropriate officer.

45. Gardens
Please note that Auckland Council shall not be able to guarantee high quality bedding displays in garden areas all year round due to seasonal factors and unforeseen circumstances. Please note that many displays (such as those in the Auckland Domain Winter Gardens and Dave Myer Robinson Park) have a strong seasonal component.

46. Noncompliance of permit conditions
Violation of noncompliance of the terms and conditions contained within this permit may result in the suspension or revocation of the permit.
Attachment C: Summary of key themes from pre-consultation engagement

High-level summary of feedback provided in local board workshops.

Economic benefits
- Filming has economic benefits for Auckland but the potentially negative impacts of filming must be managed and mitigated.
- It is important to get the criteria for determining when and where filming should or should not take place right.

Landowner approval timeframes
- Landowner approval timeframes are very tight, particularly when considering complex or contentious applications.
- The current timeframes do not allow sufficient time to consider applications at full board meetings or to consult key stakeholders.

Impact on public access
- Need to give greater consideration of the extent to which filming will reduce service levels or restrict access to public open space and community facilities.
- Usage varies at different times of year, for example many places are busier during school and public holidays, and this needs to be taken into account when assessing applications. Should consider restricting filming in public open spaces and community facilities during periods of high demand.

Environmental impacts
- Need to ensure that the potentially negative effects of filming on the environment are managed and mitigated.
- Filming can have a cumulative impact on the environment, particularly in areas of high demand. This needs to be taken into account when assessing applications.

Drones
- The increasing use of drones for filming is resulting in a number of issues which need to be managed. Drones can be harmful to birds, for example by disrupting nesting or interrupting feeding. Negative impacts on birds, particularly endangered native species need to be prevented.
- Drones can also cause concerns for other users and neighbours of public open spaces. Filmmakers need to ensure that their use of drones does not impinge on the privacy of other users or neighbours and that they do not unduly impact on other users’ enjoyment of public places.

Content
- There should be greater scrutiny of applications where content may be offensive or injurious to the public good. Applications where content does not comply with New Zealand law or is inconsistent with Auckland Council’s legal and policy obligations should not be approved.

Notification
- Neighbours, local businesses and affected parties don’t always get sufficient notice of filming and are not always provided enough information about the proposed filming; this impacts on their ability to give feedback.
Other legislative or regulatory matters which should be covered in the protocol

- The Waitakere Ranges Heritage Areas Act 2008 needs to be taken into consideration when assessing applications to film within the area of the Act. This needs to be reflected in the Protocol.
- Reserve Management Plans are site specific plans which set out what types of activities may, or may not, be undertaken in a public open space classified as a reserve under the Reserves Act 1977. Reserve management plans need to be taken into account when assessing an application to film in a reserve; this needs to be reflected in the Film Protocol.
- The Film Protocol must communicate that all filming must comply with New Zealand law. For example, the film sector have a legal obligation, as employers, to provide a smokefree workplace.

High-level summary of feedback from the screen sector

- Auckland is a great place to film because of the variety of great locations within easy reach
- 69% of survey respondents felt that the Protocol was reasonably easy or very easy to understand
- 67% of survey respondents felt that the Protocol provides reasonably clear or very clear guidance on expectations of film maker’s behavior
- Main challenges to filming in Auckland include:
  - Length of time required to get a permit
  - Uncertainty around whether a permit will be granted
  - Process can be complex, especially when consultation with multiple stakeholders is required

High-level summary of People’s Panel survey

- When asked about professional filming in Auckland:
  - 84% agree or strongly agree that “filming creates job opportunities”
  - 80% agree or strongly agree that “filming is good for tourism”
  - 69% agree or strongly agree that “filming is great for my community”
  - 57% agree or strongly agree that “filming is vital for our economy”
  - 23% agree or strongly agree that “filming has an effect on the environment”
  - 12% agree or strongly agree that “filming is an nuisance or an inconvenience”
- When asked if they would like to see more or less professional filming in Auckland:
  - 70% of survey respondents would like to see more professional filming in Auckland
  - 18% would like to see the same amount of professional filming
  - 2% would like to see less professional filming
- 62% of survey respondents had encountered professional filming in Auckland.
- Those who had encountered filming were asked what impact it had had on them:
  - 44% said that filming had no impact on them
  - 39% said that filming had a slightly positive or very positive impact on them
  - 16% said that filming had a slightly negative or very negative impact on them
Those who were negatively impact by filming were asked how they were negatively impacted.

Further information on the Peoples Panel survey can be found at: 
https://aucklandcouncil.uq.co.nz/surveys/reports/xpQ8LxrokGiDQjUzGzg
Informal local board workshop views on the draft findings of the Animal Management Bylaw 2015 review

File No.: CP2019/15571

Te take mō te pūrongo
Purpose of the report
1. To provide a summary to local boards of informal views presented at recent workshops on the draft findings of the Animal Management Bylaw 2015 review, and to provide an opportunity for any formal resolutions from local boards.

Whakarāpopototanga matua
Executive summary
2. Auckland Council is reviewing the Animal Management Bylaw 2015 as part of its required five-year statutory review.
3. Staff circulated a draft findings report on the bylaw review to all local boards in May 2019.
4. Eighteen local boards requested individual workshops to ask staff questions and provide informal views on the draft findings. Staff conducted these workshops in June and July 2019.
5. The workshop discussions about the draft findings report included:
   • animal nuisances occurring regionally and locally
   • issues with some definitions in the bylaw
   • requirements to provide identification for owned animals
   • Auckland Council’s processes for managing animals
   • current and suggested controls on specific animals, e.g. stock, bees, horses, and cats.
6. This report summarises the informal views provided at these workshops. These informal views will guide staff in developing and assessing options for managing animals in Auckland.
7. This report also gives local boards an opportunity to formalise any views before staff present findings and options to the Regulatory Committee in early 2020. Staff will seek direction from the committee at that time if the bylaw needs to be confirmed, amended, or revoked.
8. Local boards will have another opportunity to provide formal views when staff develop a statement of proposal following the Regulatory Committee’s recommendations.

Ngā tūtohunga
Recommendations
That the Whau Local Board:

a) receive this report on informal workshop summary views from local boards on the draft findings of the Animal Management Bylaw 2015 review.

b) provide any formal views on the draft findings of the Animal Management Bylaw 2015 review.
Horopaki

Context


10. The purpose of the bylaw is to provide for the ownership of animals in a way that:
   - protects the public from nuisance
   - maintains and promotes public health and safety
   - minimises the potential for offensive behaviour in public places
   - manages animals in public places.

11. To help achieve its purpose the bylaw enables rules to be made on specific animals in separate controls (Figure 1). The bylaw contains controls for:
   - beekeeping in urban areas
   - keeping stock in urban areas
   - horse riding in a public place.

Figure 1 – Animal Management Bylaw 2015 framework

The bylaw does not address dogs


13. The bylaw regulates owners of any animal of the animal kingdom except humans and dogs.

The bylaw does not regulate animal welfare

14. The Local Government Act 2002 and Health Act 1956, under which the bylaw was created, provide powers to protect people from nuisance and harm, not animals.

15. Issues with predators eating protected wildlife or animals trampling natural fauna are addressed through other legislation such as the Animal Welfare Act 1999, Wildlife Act 1953 and Biosecurity Act 1993.
The bylaw must be reviewed to ensure it is still necessary and appropriate

16. Auckland Council must complete a statutory review of the bylaw by 30 April 2020 to prevent it from expiring.

17. Following the statutory review, the council can propose the bylaw be confirmed, amended, revoked or replaced using a public consultative procedure.

18. In May 2019 staff completed a draft findings report for the bylaw review. The draft report identified current issues with animal nuisance and potential areas of improvement for the bylaw.

Staff held local board workshops to obtain informal views on the draft findings report

19. Staff provided a copy of the draft findings report to all local boards in May 2019. Eighteen local boards requested workshops which were conducted in June and July 2019.

20. At these workshops local boards provided informal views and asked questions on the draft findings report. These informal views will aid staff in producing a range of options to respond to identified animal nuisance and management issues.

Tātaritanga me ngā tohutohu
Analysis and advice

21. The following sections summarise the informal local board views from the workshops collectively. The sections provide informal views on:

- ongoing animal nuisance issues
- the bylaw’s definition of ‘owner’
- the bylaw’s definition of ‘nuisance’
- exclusion rules for companion animals
- identifying owned animals
- the council’s processes for managing animals
- views on existing and new controls for specific animals.

22. The PowerPoint presented at the local board workshops is provided in Attachment A. The subsections below reference the relevant slide pages.

23. Questions from local boards at the workshops are provided in Attachment B. These questions will be further explored during the options analysis.

There are ongoing issues with animal nuisance (Slides 9-10)

24. At the workshops staff presented known animal nuisances occurring regionally and locally. Previous engagement captured many types of nuisance, but local boards added and emphasised the nuisances listed below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 2 - Local board informal views on animal nuisances</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bees</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Bees leaving excrement on cars is a minor nuisance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Some people, especially those with bee allergies, are fearful of bees coming onto their property.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Birds</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Types of nuisance caused by birds is very subjective.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• People are abandoning geese and ducks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Breeding parrots is a nuisance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Turkeys and peacocks are causing a nuisance in rural areas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cats</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Feeding wild pigeons and seagulls is causing a nuisance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• There are large numbers of stray cats across the region.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Cats breed in construction and development spaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Cats cause a nuisance by defecating in vegetable gardens.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Abandoned kittens become feral and cause nuisance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Cats are eating native wildlife.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pigs</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• In urban areas temporarily keeping pigs for fattening causes nuisance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rabbits</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Rabbit infestations on council land cause nuisance to neighbouring properties.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Roosters</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Roosters are a nuisance and can be vicious, harmful animals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• In rural areas people are abandoning roosters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Rural areas have a higher tolerance for roosters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stock</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• In rural areas there are issues with fences deteriorating and stock escaping.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Loose chickens and wandering stock are a nuisance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vermin</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• People complain about vermin and water rats in waterways, low tide or the deep bush.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Open composting could create issues with vermin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Complaints about rats are increasing.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The bylaw’s definition of ‘owner’ needs to be reviewed** *(Slide 15)*

25. The bylaw focuses on the responsibilities of *owners* of animals. It is unclear if someone who is providing for the needs of an animal, such as food or shelter, becomes responsible for that animal as their ‘owner’.

26. Most local boards view that the bylaw’s definition of ‘owner’ should be clearer.

**Table 3 - Local Board informal views on the definition of ‘owner’**

- Any animal, whether owned or unowned, should be addressed in the bylaw.
- The current definition is useful as it captures a broad scope of animal owners.
- The definition should elaborate on criteria for the phrase ‘under that person’s care’.
- Owner definition should include accountability for feeding wild animals but should:
  - not punish volunteers who care for the animals’ wellbeing
  - allow animal control officers to feed animals to trap them.

27. In response to questions from local boards at the workshops, staff note the following.
- The Regional Pest Management Plan 2019-2029 manages cats that are not microchipped or identified by a collar and that are on significant ecological areas.
- The Wildlife Act 1953 provides that a wild animal is the property of the Crown until it has been lawfully taken or killed. At that point it becomes the property of the killer or trapper. This act specifically excludes some animals, such as cats, pigeons and rats, from being vested in the Crown.
- In areas of high conservation value or where there is serious threat, the council will undertake control of certain pest animals. In general, landowners and occupiers are primarily responsible for managing pests.
The bylaw’s definition of ‘nuisance’ needs to be reviewed *(Slide 15)*

28. The bylaw uses the Health Act 1956 definition of ‘nuisance’. This includes a person, animal thing, or circumstance causing unreasonable interference with the peace, comfort, or convenience of another person.

29. Local boards provided a mix of informal views on the definition of ‘nuisance’. Some local boards commented that the definition should have more specific criteria, while others said the bylaw should retain the current broad definition.

**Table 4 - Local board informal views on the definition of ‘nuisance’**

- The definition of nuisance in the Health Act 1956 is outdated.
- Having specific and measurable criteria for nuisance is good.
- The nuisance definition is difficult to enforce without some specific criteria.
- Intensification and tenancy laws allowing for pets will increase nuisance incidents, so the definition needs more specific criteria.
- Reporting animal nuisance can cause tension between neighbours. Specific criteria would be useful, so neighbours are not left to interpret nuisance on their own.
- A broader definition of nuisance fits with common law and covers more occurrences.
- There cannot be one definition of nuisance since there is no one definition of Aucklanders.
- The definition of nuisance in the bylaw should have both general and specific parts.

Incorporating companion animals into the bylaw needs to be reviewed *(Slide 15)*

30. Currently, the bylaw does not mention companion animals (pets). The bylaw manages animals equally unless they are stock, poultry or bees.

31. Some Aucklanders find it confusing that the bylaw does not specifically address companion animals. There is misunderstanding that stock animals which are kept as pets instead of food, such as pigs and goats, are not subject to the bylaw’s stock controls.

32. Local boards had mixed views about creating a definition for companion animals. Some viewed the rules should apply based on how the animal is kept. Other local boards said the rules should apply regardless if the animal is a pet.

**Table 5 - Local board informal views on adding companion animals in the bylaw’s definitions**

**Companion animals should have separate rules**

- Some animals should be defined as companion animals in the bylaw.
- The bylaw should make exceptions if any animal is defined as stock but is a pet.
- Companion animals should be excluded from the bylaw rules.
  - Goats are popular pets and can be good companions.
  - Farm animals as pets can provide the same benefits as traditional pets.

**Companion animals should not have separate rules**

- Companion animals which are stock animals should still require same licensing process as other stock animals.
- Companion animals should not have their own rules as some neighbours are not familiar or
Okay with stock animals being kept as pets.

- Having a specific definition increases complexity and introduces subjectivity. It should not matter what a person says about their animal.
- People should not be allowed to have livestock as pets in urban areas.
- An animal is an animal no matter how it is kept. Since the nuisance effects on neighbours are the same, there should be no distinctions.

33. In response to questions from local boards at the workshops staff note that you cannot buy or take ownership of a pest animal. If you already own a pest animal, you can keep it, but you cannot abandon it, give it to a new owner, or allow the pest animal to breed. The Regional Pest Management Plan 2019-2029 classifies unowned cats as pests.

Requirements for identifying owned animals needs to be reviewed (Slide 17)

34. The bylaw does not require owners to provide their animal with identification.
35. The draft findings report revealed that requiring animal identification would facilitate addressing animal nuisance issues. Most local boards viewed animal identification as helpful but impractical.

Table 6 - Local board informal views on identifying owned animals

- If your animal is going to leave your property, it should be identified.
- Council should offer a form of assistance to identify your animal.
- Every farm animal should be tagged and named.
- Identifying animals would prevent people from feeding unowned animals.
- Identifying animals is useful but impractical.
- The council should collaborate with the National Animal Identification and Tracing database.

36. In response to questions from local boards at the workshops, staff note that provided there is a valid purpose, the council has power to regulate animal registration. Any requirement would need to match the size and scale of the issue and would need to show it would effectively reduce harm and nuisance to people.

There is uncertainty about the council’s processes for managing animals (Slide 17)

37. The draft findings report identified that some Aucklanders are unclear about the council’s processes and protocols for managing animals, especially unowned animals. This confusion reduces people’s willingness to report nuisance, as they are unsure who is responsible. Only two per cent of surveyed respondents who experienced animal nuisance reported it to the council.
38. The draft findings report identified the bylaw could be strengthened by providing information about non-regulatory processes and protocols for managing animals, especially unowned animals. Most local boards viewed that the council’s processes could be clearer.

Table 7 - Local board informal views on council processes for managing animals

- The bylaw should be clear on what the council does and does not do regarding animal management.
- The council should clarify the process for reporting unowned animals causing nuisance.
- The bylaw’s animal management processes need to align with the Regional Pest Management
Plan.
- The council should offer mediation services for disgruntled neighbours over animal nuisance.

39. In response to questions from local boards at the workshops, staff note the following.
- A property owner may trap and/or lawfully kill an animal on their property. It is a criminal offence to kill an owned animal or destroy the animal inhumanely.
- To prove a legal claim for damage to private property by an owned animal, the property owner would need to show the owner of the animal had failed to take reasonable care to avoid the damage.
- Culling is managed by central government laws and regulations, rather than the Animal Management Bylaw 2015.

Views on existing controls for specific animals in the bylaw (Slide 22)

40. Around 90 per cent of surveyed Aucklanders said the current bylaw controls for bees, stock and horses were about right or had no view.

41. The draft findings report showed council compliance response officers would find limits to urban beehives and more specific requirements for chicken coop locations easier to enforce than the current bylaw controls.

42. Local boards had a mix of views. Some had views on needing more controls, and some had views to keep the controls the same or less.

Table 8 - Local board informal views on the current controls in the bylaw

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal</th>
<th>Current control</th>
<th>Views on more control</th>
<th>Views on same or less control</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bees</td>
<td>Any properties, urban or rural, can keep any number of bees. Beekeepers must manage the flight path and temperament of their bees. Beekeepers must ensure nuisance from their bees' excrement is minimised, and the bees have a suitable water source on the premises.</td>
<td>- The council should restrict beekeeping if people have bee-sting allergies. - Limit the number of beehives in an area to prevent colony competition. - Increase awareness and visibility of who keeps bees in an area. - Restrict beekeeping to rural areas.</td>
<td>- Bees are not causing much nuisance, so there is no need for more regulation. - We should be encouraging beekeeping. Should regulate rather than overregulate. - Do not restrict bees to just urban areas. - Bees should be unregulated. - Would be concerned if licensing costs for beekeeping were introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horses</td>
<td>Local boards are able to set specific controls for horses for local parks and beaches. Horses are currently not allowed to be kept in urban areas without a licence from the council unless the premises is larger than 4,000</td>
<td>- The same access rules for dogs on beaches should be applied to horses. - Do not prohibit horses on beaches but restrict them to off-peak times. - Should lobby central</td>
<td>- Horse owners should be responsible for removing manure. The bylaw should encourage accountability and consider that picking up manure is not always practical, e.g. on busy roads.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Horses cont.  
- Manure is removed  
- Consideration is taken to not intimidate or cause a nuisance for other public space users  
- Beach dune damage is minimised.

Stock  
Chickens, ducks, geese, pheasants and quail are the only stock animals currently permitted by the bylaw in urban areas without a licence from the council. Any other stock animal, including roosters, would require a licence from the council unless the premises is larger than 4,000 square metres. Stock in urban areas must also be restrained within the boundaries of the premises on which they are kept, and chicken coops must not cause a nuisance and must be regularly cleaned. In rural areas the above controls do not apply. Rural residents must ensure their animals do not cause a nuisance to any other person.

Table 9 - Local board informal views on controls for cats and other animals

Informal local board views on controls for cats  
Informal views on introducing controls for cats
- The bylaw should limit the number of cats a person can own.

Views on new controls for specific animals (Slide 23)
43. A quarter of surveyed Aucklanders (26 per cent) said the bylaw should introduce controls for other animals. Of those wanting controls for other animals, over half (57 per cent) wanted controls introduced for cats.
44. The draft findings report identified that council compliance officers and the SPCA support microchipping and registering of cats.
45. Local boards provided mixed views on introducing controls for new animals. The local boards agreed that any regulatory response would need to match the scale of the issue, be cost-effective, and have measurable effects on reducing nuisance.
- Should make sure extremes are restricted, such as having 30+ cats.
  - The bylaw should require the de-sexing of cats.
    - The council should work closely with the SPCA in this matter.
    - Make it compulsory for cat owners.
  - Local boards have varying support for requiring microchipping of cats including:
    - full compulsory microchipping across the region
    - limited microchipping only to cats living in eco-sensitive areas.
  - The bylaw should have the same registration process for cats as the council has for dogs.
  - There should be a curfew for cats.
  - There should be controls to dissuade people from feeding stray cats, as it reinforces the cats’ behaviour.
  - Publish best practices for tourists with cats and other animals visiting Hauraki Gulf Islands.
  - The council should restrict cats from wandering.
  - The council should restrict certain cat breeds, like Bengals.

**Informal views on not introducing controls for cats**

- Cat registration is difficult and has failed before. Auckland Council already has difficulty registering and enforcing dogs.
- Cats naturally wander. Containing them would be cruel.
- The council should invest in substantial long-term public education regarding cats.
- If the council restricts caring for stray cats, it could create animal welfare issues.
- Controlling cats is too trivial for the council to get involved.

**Informal local board views on controls for other animals**

- Rules are needed to restrict feeding wild animals in public, especially birds.
- How many animals a person can own should be restricted by section size.
- There should be a higher management expectation on animal owners in urban areas.
- The bylaw should address the health risks that animals can cause their owners.
- There should be a complete ban on snakes and ferrets.
- Rabbits are a major pest, especially in urban areas. The bylaw should restrict breeding.
- There should be controls on keeping birds in small cages.
- Unless there is a significant problem, neighbours should sort out their own problems.

46. In response to questions from local boards at the workshops, staff note the following,

- Any costs for managing stray cats would be investigated during the options development phase to respond to nuisance issues.
- The Local Government Act 2002 would give the council power to impose a curfew on cats if it was an appropriate response to the scale of the nuisance and would clearly show how the curfew would reduce harm and nuisance to humans.
- The council currently has more legal power to respond to dog nuisance than cat nuisance. The Dog Control Act 1996 gives the council wide-varying powers to address dog issues. There is no similar legislation for cats.
- Rat pest control is addressed through the Regional Pest Management Plan 2019-2029.
The Regional Pest Management Plan lists some tropical animals that can be treated as pests. These include eastern water dragons, Indian ring-necked parakeets, and snake-necked turtles.

- Chickens were not classified as pests in the Regional Pest Management Plan. The purpose of the plan is to protect the Auckland region’s important biodiversity assets. There are no significant biodiversity benefits to managing feral chickens at a regional level. Feral chickens are primarily a human nuisance issue centred in the urban areas where people feed them.

Other views from local boards

Rights of property owners and protection

47. The bylaw does not explain what options property owners have to handle animal nuisance on their property themselves. It is unclear which animals property owners are allowed to trap and dispose of on their own and which animals are protected.

48. Some local boards said the bylaw should clarify property owners’ rights.

Enforcement

49. Some local boards said the council should be prepared to enforce any rules it may introduce.

50. The Local Government Act 2002 does not give the power to issue an infringement notice under a bylaw. Compliance officers have said this inhibits their ability to address nuisance issues as their next step after trying to elicit voluntary compliance is prosecution. This can be costly to the council.

51. Some local boards provided views that the Local Government Act 2002 should be amended to allow for infringement fines. Some local boards viewed that the bylaw would already be fit for purpose if it could be enforced with infringements.

Education

52. Most local boards said the council needs to increase education and awareness about the current animal management rules. Some local boards viewed that the council should focus more on informing Aucklanders of responsible animal management than increasing regulation.

53. Some local boards also advised that any changes to the bylaw, if required, would need to have a strong communication and awareness plan.

Ngā whakaaweawe me ngā tirohanga a te rōpū Kaunihera
Council group impacts and views

54. The bylaw affects the operation of council units involved in animal management. These include biosecurity, animal management and compliance response officers. Staff held face-to-face meetings and a workshop with council officers. These views were provided in the draft findings report and workshops.

Ngā whakaaweawe ā-rohe me ngā tirohanga a te poari ā-rohe
Local impacts and local board views

55. Staff captured informal local board views through cluster workshops in March 2019. The draft findings report was shared with all local boards in May 2019, and staff attended individual local board workshops through June and July 2019.
Informal local board workshop views on the draft findings of the Animal Management Bylaw 2015 review

Tauākī whakaaweawe Māori
Māori impact statement

56. Staff sought views from mana whenua at the Infrastructure and Environmental Services Forum in April 2019. The members present at the hui sought clarity that the bylaw’s reference of ‘public places’ does not extend to papakāingā (communal Māori land).

57. Members were also concerned with threats to estuaries, beaches, and waterways from unregulated coastal horse trails. These views were provided in the draft findings report and options development will consider these views.

Ngā ritenga ā-pūtea
Financial implications

58. The cost of the bylaw review and implementation will be met within existing budgets.

Ngā raru tūpono me ngā whakamaurutanga
Risks and mitigations

59. There is a risk that the public may perceive this report as formal local board views or an attempt to regulate cats without public engagement. This risk can be mitigated by replying to any emerging media or public concerns by saying that no additions or changes will be made to the Animal Management Bylaw 2015 without full public consultation.

60. Local boards will have an opportunity to provide formal resolutions on any changes proposed to the bylaw in early 2020 before a public consultative procedure.

Ngā koringa ā-muri
Next steps

61. Following any additional formalised views from local boards, staff will generate and assess options to respond to identified animal nuisances. Staff will present these findings and options in a report to the relevant committee in the new council term in early 2020.

62. Staff will seek formal local board views when developing a statement of proposal once the committee gives direction on animal management.

Ngā tāpirihanga
Attachments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Presentation at local board workshops on draft findings of the Animal Management Bylaw 2015 review</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Local board questions from the workshops</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ngā kaihaina
Signatories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Authorisers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maclean Grindell</td>
<td>Louise Mason - GM Local Board Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Glenn Boyd - Relationship Manager Henderson-Massey, Waitakere Ranges, Whau</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Informal local board workshop views on the draft findings of the Animal Management Bylaw 2015 review
What is the bylaw about?

The purpose of the bylaw is to provide for the ownership of animals in a way that:

- protects the public from nuisance
- maintains and promotes public health and safety
- minimises the potential for offensive behavior in public places
- manages animals in public places.

Contains specific controls for:

- keeping of bees in an urban area
- keeping of stock in an urban area
- horses in public places.

Bylaw was adopted in 2015 and replaced 18 legacy bylaws.
What legislation gives the bylaw its power?

**Section 145: General bylaw-making power for territorial authorities**
A territorial authority may make bylaws for:
- protecting the public from nuisance
- protecting, promoting, and maintaining public health and safety
- minimising the potential for offensive behaviour in public places.

**Section 146: Specific bylaw-making powers of territorial authorities**
Without limiting section 145, a territorial authority may make bylaws for the purposes of:
- regulating the keeping of animals, bees and poultry
- managing and protecting reserves or other land under the control of the territorial authority from, damage, misuse, or loss.

**Section 64: Bylaws**
Every local authority may make bylaws for:
- improving, promoting, or protecting public health, and preventing or abating nuisances
- regulating, licensing, or prohibiting the keeping of any animals in the district
- preventing the outbreak or spread of disease by the agency of flies, mosquitoes, or other insects, or of rats, mice, or other vermin.
Why is the council reviewing the bylaw?

Local Government Act 2002 – Statutory review

- Bylaw must be reviewed within five years of being made
- The council must decide whether:
  - a bylaw is the most appropriate way of addressing the perceived problem
  - the bylaw is ‘fit for purpose’
  - the current bylaw gives rise to any Bill of Rights implications
  - to retain, amend, replace, or revoke the bylaw
- Auckland Council Regulatory Committee
Most Aucklanders own animals
People’s Panel data on animal ownership

No animal ownership (pg. 9)

Overall (pg. 7)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animals on property</th>
<th>Percentage of respondents</th>
<th>Average amount (Range)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cats</td>
<td>42%</td>
<td>1.6 (1-17)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dogs</td>
<td>33%</td>
<td>1.4 (1-20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chickens / roosters</td>
<td>7%</td>
<td>6.7 (1-150,000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish (indoor and/or outdoor)</td>
<td>6%</td>
<td>13.2 (1-200)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sheep</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>(1-3,000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birds</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>(1-50)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bees</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>(1-80 hives)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cows</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>(1-740)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rabbits</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>(~30)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other (please specify)</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>Included - insects, frogs, hedgehogs, and worms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horses / ponies</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>(~33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ducks</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>(1-960)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goats</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>(~83)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guinea pigs</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>(1-5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mice / rats</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>(1-200)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reptiles</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>(1-1,000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Owns no animals</strong></td>
<td><strong>34%</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
People’s Panel data on animal ownership

Cats (pg. 8)

Chickens and roosters (pg. 10)
Many Aucklanders are experiencing animal nuisance
Top issues from complaints data and People’s Panel

Council complaints data 2015-2019

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Examples of complaints</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wandering</td>
<td>Stock on roads and property</td>
<td>107,374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Animals getting into left out rubbish</td>
<td>15,227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise</td>
<td>Barking and crowing</td>
<td>88,187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Owners not picking up after their animals</td>
<td>1,530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Faeces</td>
<td>Wandering animals leaving poop on property</td>
<td>2,296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Owners not picking up after their animals</td>
<td>1,795</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bad odours attracting mice and rats</td>
<td>1,244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dead Animals</td>
<td>Dead animals dumped on side of roads</td>
<td>671</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dead animals in ponds and storm water fields</td>
<td>595</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smell</td>
<td>Bad odours attracting mice and rats</td>
<td>406</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Decomposing animals</td>
<td>836</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

People’s Panel April 2019

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Examples of nuisance</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
<td>2,353 (66%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unhygienic behaviour</td>
<td>Animal faeces left in parks, walkways or on private property, especially vegetable gardens</td>
<td>1,350 (32%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animal wandering</td>
<td>Animals wandering onto neighbouring property</td>
<td>806 (21%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sensory nuisance</td>
<td>Odour from animal excreta</td>
<td>666 (16%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Damage to property</td>
<td>Scratched deck furniture</td>
<td>531 (12%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Animals attacking native wildlife</td>
<td>428 (10%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Feeding wild animals</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Aggressive looking livestock in public areas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Decayed animals in public areas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dead Behaviour</td>
<td>Pets and people being attacked by aggressive animals</td>
<td>570 (9%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slaughter</td>
<td>Finding the practice of killing animals offensive</td>
<td>59 (1%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Witnessing slaughter or lifetome remains</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Top nuisances (People’s Panel)

Overall nuisance rates (pg. 17)

- Which animals have caused a nuisance in the past year? (pg. 19)

**Hot topics**

- Cats defecating in vegetable gardens, wandering onto neighbouring properties, owners not doing anything about it
- Harbouring vermin in tall grass or rubbish
- Neighbours feeding wild birds
- Smelly chicken coops, loose chickens
- Crowing roosters
How the bylaw currently addresses animal nuisance
Bylaw structure \((1/2)\)

- **General nuisance clause**
  - Owners must ensure their animals do not cause a nuisance to any other person or cause a risk to public health and safety.

- **Obligations of animal owners in public places**
  - Owners must ensure their animals do not damage property belonging to another person.
  - Requires licence to keep bees or graze stock in public places.

- **Slaughter, hunting, removal or release of animals**
  - A person must ensure slaughter does not create a nuisance, including animal remains.
  - No slaughtering in public places or urban premises less than 4000 square metres (besides poultry)
  - No release or abandonment in a public place unless written approval from the council
  - No hunting or removing an animal in a public place unless written approval from the council

- **Controls**  
  \((next\ slide)\)
Bylaw structure (2/2)

- **Controls**
  - Keeping of bees in urban areas
    - bee management
    - flight path management
    - provision of water
  - Keeping of stock in urban areas
    - the number of stock that may be kept
    - the conditions in which they are kept
  - Horses in public places
    - general conditions of use
    - places with additional conditions
    - places where prohibited
Uncertainty on some definitions in the bylaw
Definition challenges

- **Owner** — “any person who has an animal in their possession or custody, or under that person’s care, control or supervision.”

- **Nuisance** — bylaw uses Health Act 1956 definition, and “includes a circumstance causing unreasonable interferences with the peace, comfort or convenience of another person.”

- **Animal management** — animal management officers mostly enforce dogs. AMOs not responsible for cats, wildlife, animal pests, birds, marine mammals or urban poultry, bees or stock.
  - **Stock** — “cattle, deer…poultry and any other animal kept in captivity, or farmed, an dependent on humans for their care and sustenance.”
  - **Poultry** — “means any live bird that is kept or raised for the purpose of producing eggs, hatching eggs or poultry products and includes chickens, ducks… roosters and swans.”
Uncertainty on processes and identifying owned animals
Processes and identifying animal owners

- Only two per cent of People’s Panel respondents experiencing nuisance reported their nuisance to the council.

- The council is generally not responsible for pests on your own property.

- The bylaw is difficult to enforce without an identified owner.
Some Aucklanders and compliance staff want additional controls on animals (particularly cats)
Current bylaw controls (1/3)

Beekeeping in urban areas

Horse riding in a public place

Horses in a Public Place Control – General conditions

(1) In a public place the owner of a horse—
(a) must remove or safely dispose of any horse manure that is deposited in a public place;
(b) must show due consideration for other public place users at all times;
(c) must, when on a beach, ride or lead their horse in a manner that does not intimidate, cause a danger or nuisance to other beach users, and
(d) must not ride or lead their horse on coastal dunes except when accessing the beach, an adjoining property or road in a manner that does not cause, nor is likely to cause, damage to any part of that dune, and that utilises the most direct route possible.

Horses in a Public Place Control – Conditions for specified beaches

(2) The following conditions apply to the presence of horses on Algies Beach, Hatfields Beach, Martins Bay Beach, Omaha Beach, Orewa Beach and Shelly Beach –
(a) horses must only be ridden or lead along the beach between the times of mid and low tide, and must be ridden or lead along the beach below the high tide mark;
(b) between 1 December and 15 February (including weekends), horses are only allowed before 10:00am and after 7:00pm and
(c) horses are prohibited at Easter weekend (Friday to Monday inclusive) and Labour weekend (Saturday to Monday inclusive).

(3) The following conditions apply to the presence of horses on Karaka Beach as shown in Schedule 1 –
(a) during high use periods, horses are restricted to a walk within the 1km ZONE, at all other times horses are restricted to a walk within the Safe Zone;
(b) within the 1km ZONE, horses must remain within 10 metres of the water’s edge wherever possible;
(c) horse manure must be removed from the 1km ZONE; and
(d) the unloading of horses is only permitted in the Horse Unloading Area.
Current bylaw controls (2/3)

Keeping of stock in urban areas (1/2)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of stock</th>
<th>Premises smaller than 2000 square metres</th>
<th>Premises larger than 2000 square metres</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cattle</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chickens</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deer</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donkeys</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ducks</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geese</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goats</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horses</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Llamas</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peacocks</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pashens</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pheasants</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pigs</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ponies</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quail</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roosters</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sheep</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swans</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1: Number of stock allowed to be kept in an urban area without a licence

Explanation note: Obligations of animal owners still apply as contained in clauses 6, 7 and 8 of the Animal Management Bylaw.
### Current bylaw controls (3/3)

#### Keeping of stock in urban areas (2/2)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Keeping of Stock Control – Prevention of wandering stock</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(2) The owner of any stock in an urban area must ensure their stock is restrained within the boundaries of the premises on which they are kept.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Keeping of stock control - Containment of chickens</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(3) The owner of any chicken must ensure that any chickens are confined on the premises in such a manner that the chicken cannot freely leave the premises. This can be achieved by providing either: (a) an enclosed chicken coop with an attached run, or (b) an enclosed chicken coop and adequate fencing of the premises.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Keeping of stock control - Location of chicken coops</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(4) The owner of any chicken must not allow their chicken coop to cause a nuisance to any other person.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Keeping of stock control - Chicken coop cleanliness</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(5) The owner of any chicken must regularly clean their chicken coop as appropriate to maintain the chicken coop in a dry, clean condition and state of good repair, free from any offensive smell, overflow and vermin.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Views on existing controls

- **Bees** *(pg. 53)* — restrict to rural, require urban licence, restrict number of hives in urban, excrement unenforceable

  ![People's Panel – Bee controls](chart)

- **Horses** *(pg. 56)* — ban from beaches, stricter manure accountability, regulation on roads

  ![People's Panel – Horse controls](chart)

- **Stock** *(pg. 59)* — no stock in urban areas, ban roosters in urban areas and rural-urban boundary, stricter fencing rules, restrict how close coops to property boundaries

  ![People's Panel – Stock controls](chart)
Views on new controls

People’s Panel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Should there be controls on other animals?</th>
<th>On which animals?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I don’t know</td>
<td>Cats 57%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
<td>Dogs 44%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Other 21%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Poultry 7%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

"Other" includes sheep, snakes, guinea pigs, reptiles, mustelids, stoats, wasps and fish.

- **Cats** - registration, microchipping, de-sexing, more owner accountability, protection of native wildlife

- **Birds** – no birds in small cages, exotic birds should be monitored and licenced
Any other views?
Local board questions from the Animal Management Bylaw review workshops

**Local board questions on definition of ‘owner’**
- Who is responsible or the owner for cat colonies?
- What happens if someone says it is not my pet when it clearly is?
- Any case law on owner definition of ‘under that person’s care’?
- What happens if you trap an animal and keep the baby?
- If you trap a pest on your property and no one comes and picks it up do you become the “owner”?
- Do compliance officers who seize an animal then become its owner?
- Who owns animals in public spaces? The Crown? The council?
- Who is responsible for unowned animals in public spaces?
- What is council’s responsibility for unowned animals?
- If someone feeds unowned chickens every day are the chickens under their care? At what point do they become an owner?

**Local board questions on definition on companion animals**
- What is a “pest”?
- Can you keep pests as pets?

**Local board questions on identifying owned animals**
- Can a bylaw require that owners register their pets on an externally owned database such as the NZ Companion Animal Registry?

**Local board questions on council processes**
- What are the range of options property owners have to respond to animal nuisance?
- Is the question of culling managed under this bylaw or some other act?
- What is the process for obtaining an animal management licence?
- What is the process for keeping bees?
- How does and can Auckland Council manage pet owners living on boundaries of the Domain and large parks?
- Who enforces grazing stock in public places?
- What is the local board process for changing horse controls?

**Local board questions on cats**
- What is the cost for managing stray cats?
- Could the council implement a curfew on cats?
- What would a council cat control policy look like?
- What are the controls in place for tropical animals?
- Why are chickens not classified as pests in the Regional Pest Management Plan?
Why could Omaui consider banning cats?
What do we do about cats coming onto property and killing birds you’ve been looking after?
What is the definition of feral cats in the Regional Pest Management Plan? Who is responsible for cat colonies?

Other questions
- Does the Crematoria bylaw cover animal crematoria? If not, does the odour (and nuisance) from them therefore come under the scope of the Animal Management bylaw?
- How do stock rules apply in semi-urban areas?
- How should the bylaw address bees that make toxic honey from contaminated tutu flower pollen?
- Will housing intensification increase animal nuisance problems?
- Should the bylaw manage the behaviour of humans, not animals?
- What are the rules for slaughter outside a regulated space?
- Will the Tenancy Act allowing pets increase the problem?
- Can the landowner take action to destroy animals that come onto their property? What methods will be allowed?
- What are the controls in place for tropical animals?
- What is the definition of wildlife?
- What animal management powers do we have under the Reserves Act?
- Muslim community on views on slaughter? Any approved process?
- Is the question of culling managed under this bylaw or some other act?
- What rights do property owners have to deal with the problem themselves?
- What happens if you abandon a fish in your private stream that runs into public water?
- What happens if your private lake floods and the aquatic pets get into public waterways?
- Could the bylaw say “no feeding of animals in a public place?”
- Can a bylaw require that owners register their pets on an externally owned database such as NZCAC?
- What are the range of options property owners have to respond to animal nuisance?
- Is the Regional Pest Management Plan adopted? Were chickens purposefully not classified as pests?
- If an animal trespasses on my property is this a nuisance?
Te take mō te pūrongo
Purpose of the report

Whakarāpopototanga matua
Executive summary
2. The Auckland Council Annual Report 2018/2019 is being prepared and needs to be adopted by the Governing Body by 26 September 2019. As part of the overall report package, individual reports for each local board are prepared.
3. Auckland Council currently has a series of bonds quoted on the New Zealand Stock Exchange (NZX) Debt Market maintained by NZX Limited. As council is subject to obligations under the NZX Main Board and Debt Market Listing Rules and the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013 (FMCA), local boards may not release annual financial results in any form. Therefore, the attached annual report is being presented as confidential.

Ngā tūtohunga
Recommendations
That the Whau Local Board:
   a) adopt the 2018/2019 Whau Local Board Annual Report as set out in Attachment A.
   b) note that any proposed changes will be clearly communicated and agreed with the chairperson before the report is submitted for adoption by the Governing Body by 26 September 2019.
   c) note that the draft 2018/2019 Whau Local Board Annual Report (refer to Attachment A to the agenda report) will remain confidential until after the Auckland Council group results for 2018/2019 are released to the New Zealand Stock Exchange which are expected to be made public by 30 September 2019.

Horopaki
Context
4. In accordance with the Local Government (Auckland Council) Act 2009 and the Local Government Act 2002, each local board is required to monitor and report on the implementation of its 2018/2019 Local Board Agreement. This includes reporting on the performance measures for local activities, and the overall Financial Impact Statement for the local board.
5. In addition to the compliance purpose, local board annual reports are an opportunity to tell the wider performance story with a strong local flavour, including how the local board is working towards the outcomes of their local board plan.
6. Auckland Council currently has a series of bonds quoted on the NZX Debt Market (quoted bonds) maintained by NZX Limited. As a result, the council is subject to obligations under the NZX Main Board and Debt Market Listing Rules (listing rules) and the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013 (FMCA). Under these obligations, local boards may not release annual financial results in any form, including publishing their agenda/minutes containing their
results, until council group results are released to the NZX on 27 September 2019. Therefore, the attached annual report is being presented as confidential.

**Tātaritanga me ngā tohutohu**

**Analysis and advice**

7. The annual report contains the following sections:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mihi</td>
<td>The mihi relates to the local board area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message from the chairperson</td>
<td>An overall message introducing the report, highlighting achievements and challenges, including both financial and non-financial performance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local board members</td>
<td>A group photo of the local board members.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Our area</td>
<td>A visual layout of the local board area, summarising key demographic information and showing key projects and facilities in the area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performance report</td>
<td>Provides performance measure results for each activity, providing explanations where targeted service levels have not been achieved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Funding information</td>
<td>Financial performance results compared to long-term plan and annual plan budgets, together with explanations about variances.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local flavour</td>
<td>A profile of either an outstanding resident, grant, project or facility that benefits the local community.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ngā whakaaweawe me ngā tirohanga a te rōpū Kaunihera**

**Council group impacts and views**

8. Council departments and council-controlled organisations comments and views have been considered and included in the annual report in relation to activities they are responsible for delivering on behalf of local boards.

**Ngā whakaaweawe ā-rohe me ngā tirohanga a te poari ā-rohe**

**Local impacts and local board views**

9. Local board feedback will be included where possible. Any changes to the content of the final annual report will be discussed with the chairperson.

**Tauākī whakaaweawe Māori**

**Māori impact statement**

10. The annual report provides information on how Auckland Council has progressed its agreed priorities in the Long-term Plan 2018-2028 over the past 12 months. This includes engagement with Māori, as well as projects that benefit various population groups, including Māori.

**Ngā ritenga ā-pūtea**

**Financial implications**

11. The annual report reports on both the financial and service performance in each local board area.
Ngā raru tūpono me ngā whakamaurutanga

Risks and mitigations

12. The annual report is a legislatively required document. It is audited by Audit New Zealand who assess if the report represents information fairly and consistently, and that the financial statements comply with accounting standard PBE FRS-43: Summary Financial Statements. Failure to demonstrate this could result in a qualified audit opinion.

13. The annual report is a key communication to residents. It is important to tell a clear and balanced performance story, in plain English, and in a form that is accessible, to ensure that council meets its obligations to be open with the public it serves.

Ngā koringa ā-muri

Next steps

14. The next steps for the draft 2018/2019 Annual Report for the local board are:
   - Audit NZ review during August and September 2019
   - report to the Governing Body for adoption on 26 September 2019
   - release to stock exchanges and publication online on 27 September 2018
   - physical copies provided to local board offices, council service centres and libraries by the end of October 2019.

Ngā tāpirihanga

Attachments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
Auckland Council’s Year End and Quarterly Performance Report: Whau Local Board for quarter four 2018/2019

File No.: CP2019/14309

Te take mō te pūrongo
Purpose of the report
1. To provide the Whau Local Board with an integrated quarterly performance report for quarter four, 1 April – 30 June 2019, and the overall performance for the financial year, against the agreed 2018/2019 local board work programme.

Whakarāpopototanga matua
Executive summary
2. This report provides an integrated view of performance for the Whau Local Board and includes financial performance and delivery against work programmes for the 2018/2019 financial year.
3. Deferral of budgets of unfinished activities will be added into 2019/2020 work programmes by quarter one reporting.
4. Key highlights for quarter four include:
   • The Whau Pacific Peoples Plan was launched in May, and the Whau Ethnic Peoples Plan was launched in June. Celebratory launch events were held to thank all those who participated in the two processes and look forward to implementation of the respective plans’ recommendations
   • Public engagement on the Avondale integrated library and community centre was held, including significant engagement with mana whenua
   • Over 700 plants were planted at Oakley Creek via the Ecological Volunteers Programme
   • The PopUp Business School was held between the 29 April and the 10 May.
5. Key activity achievements from the 2018/2019 work programme include:
   • Site identification for the new Avondale integrated library and community centre was approved by the local board, enabling the implementation of this facility to progress
   • Completion, adoption and launch of the Ethnic and Pacific Peoples’ Plans
   • Holly Street to Heron Park Walkway was opened
   • Adoption of Waitakere ki tua to better support Maori priorities and aspirations.
6. Key activities not delivered / not progressed as expected include:
   • The Whau Local Economic Development Plan has not been delivered. A proposed refresh of the plan was developed by ATEED in 2018 but was not adopted by the local board and attempts to further review the plan and bring it to implementation were unsuccessful.
   • New Lynn Transit Laneway stage 2 was unable to proceed as originally intended due to issues that have arisen with underground infrastructure and ownership of the asset. A solution will be progressed in quarter one with a view to replacing the concrete surface of the laneway.
   • The Rewarewa pathways project has been cancelled by staff on the basis that it was not possible to find a way forward that was aligned with local board priorities and preferences.
7. The 2018/2019 financial performance report is attached but is excluded from the public. This is due to restrictions on releasing annual financial reports and results until the Auckland Council Group results are released to the NZX – on or about 30 September.

Ngā tūtohunga
Recommendations
That the Whau Local Board:

a) receive the performance report for the financial quarter and year ending 30 June 2019.

b) note the financial performance report in Attachment B of the report will remain confidential until after the Auckland Council Group results for 2018/2019 are released to the NZX which are expected to be made public by 30 September 2019.

Horopaki
Context
8. The Whau Local Board has an approved 2018/2019 work programme for the following operating departments:

- Community Services (Arts, Community and Events; Libraries and Information; Parks, Sport and Recreation; and Service Strategy and Integration) approved on 27 June 2018 (Resolution number WH/2018/72)
- Community Facilities: Build Maintain Renew and Community Leases, approved on 25 July 2018 (Resolution number WH/2018/82)
- Infrastructure and Environmental Services, approved on 27 June 2018 (Resolution number WH/2018/70)
- Local Economic Development, approved on 27 June 2018 (Resolution number WH/2018/71)

9. The graph below shows how the work programme activities meet Local Board Plan outcomes. Activities that are not part of the approved work programme but contribute towards the local board outcomes, such as advocacy by the local board, are not captured in this graph.

Graph 1: work programme activities by outcome
Tātaritanga me ngā tohutohu
Analysis and advice

10. The key achievements to report from the quarter four period include:

- The Whau Pacific Peoples Plan was launched with a celebratory event in May to thank all those who participated in the process and look forward to implementation of the plan’s recommendations.

- The Whau Ethnic Peoples Plan was launched with a celebratory event in June to thank all those who participated in the process and look forward to implementation of the plan’s recommendations.

- Public engagement on the Avondale integrated library and community centre was held, including significant engagement with mana whenua. This engagement was intended to identify service requirements and inform the design brief for the facility.

- Over 700 plants were planted at Oakley Creek via the Ecological Volunteers Programme.

11. The PopUp Business School was held between the 29 April and the 10 May. A full report will be provided to the local board soon.

Ngā whakaaweawe me ngā tirohanga a te rōpū Kaunihera
Council group impacts and views

12. The graph below identifies work programme activity by RAG status (red, amber, green and grey) which measures the performance of the activity. It shows the percentage of work programme activities that have been delivered as expected (completed by the end of July 2019) or multi-year activities which have progressed as planned (green), in progress but with issues that are being managed (amber), and activities that are undelivered or have significant issues (red) and activities that have been cancelled/deferred/merged (grey).

*Graph 2: Work Programme by RAG status*

13. The graph below shows the activity status of activities which shows the stage of the activity in each department’s work programmes. The number of activity lines differ by department as approved in the local board work programmes.
14. The table below shows the overall performance of work programme activities (RAG status and activity status by work programme).

**Table 1: End of year Local Board Work Programmes Status**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RAG Status</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>ACE</th>
<th>PSR</th>
<th>Libraries</th>
<th>SS&amp;I</th>
<th>CF</th>
<th>Leases</th>
<th>I&amp;ES</th>
<th>ATEED</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>On Hold</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td>Deferred</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>Cancelled</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Key activity achievements from the 2018/2019 work programme**

15. The key achievements in the delivery of the local board work programmes for 2018/2019 include:

- Site identification for the new Avondale integrated library and community centre was approved by the local board in quarter two, enabling the implementation of this facility to progress
- Completion, adoption and launch of the Ethnic and Pacific Peoples’ Plans in quarters three and four
- Holly Street to Heron Park Walkway was opened in quarter two
- The new pocket park in New Lynn Town Centre was opened in quarter one
- The upgrade to Brains Park was completed in quarter one
- Seventy-seven businesses were visited in the Glendene and Rosebank Road area, as part of the Industrial Pollution Prevention Programme throughout the year
- Adoption of Waitakere ki tua to better support Maori priorities and aspirations in quarter three.
Overview of work programme performance by department

Arts, Community and Events work programme

16. In the Arts, Community and Events work programme, there are 22 activities that were completed by the end of the year or will be by end of July 2019

Parks, Sport and Recreation work programme

17. In the Parks, Sport and Recreation work programme, there are six activities that were completed by the end of the year or will be by end of July 2019, four of which are funded from the local board’s LDI. Activities that are delayed, on hold or not delivered are discussed in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity name</th>
<th>RAG status</th>
<th>Activity status</th>
<th>Explanation and mitigation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Open space services provision planning             | Red        | In progress     | All the activities are in progress but will not be completed in Q4. The programme was re-defined at a workshop with the local board in October 2018. Progress on each is outlined below:  
  • Play Provision Assessment: Delayed, final draft document to be presented at a future workshop.  
  • Diversity in Parks investigation: Regular discussions with Arts, Community and Events and Active Recreation arranged to determine how recommendations from the report could be implemented in existing programmes for the 2019/2020 financial year.  
  • Shade/Shelter Provision Assessment: Principles of provision workshopped with the local board in Q3. Final draft document will be workshopped for adoption in Q1 2019/2020.  
  • Olympic Park carpark investigation: Local board updated Q3. A report is being drafted to seek approval from the Auckland Transport Parking Committee for enforcement for two car parks at Olympic Park. This project is expected to be completed in Q1. Auckland Transport have advised the proposed changes are still being discussed with stakeholders. |
| Maori naming of reserves and facilities Phase Two | Red        | In progress     | The activity is progressing as previously reported, with four mana whenua having indicated naming interests and now engaged in an agreed process to ensure one name is gifted back to the local board per site. |
| Avondale College courts – facility partnership     | Red        | On hold         | Avondale College, Netball Waitakere and Netball Northern have informed staff of their intention to withdraw from this facility partnership project. This means the project will cease and no further funding will be committed. The local board will be updated in Q1. |
| Specific Implementation for Auckland’s urban forests (Ngahere) Strategy | Amber      | In progress     | A draft local assessment report has been completed for review by the local board, to be followed by a final report for approval in Q1.  
  This will complete the Knowing phase. The local board has allocated funding for the Growing phase in 2019/2020. |

Libraries and Information work programme

18. In the Libraries and Information work programme, there are eight activities that were completed by the end of the year or will be by end of July 2019, of which two – additional
targeted programming and additional opening hours – are funded through the board’s LDI budget.

**Service Strategy and Integration work programme**

19. The only current item in the Service Strategy and Integration work programme is the LTP-funded development of an integrated library and community centre in Avondale. This activity is progressing as anticipated with community engagement and the development of a draft design brief completed in Q1.

**Community Facilities: Build Maintain Renew work programme**

20. In the Community Facilities: Build Maintain Renew work programme, there are 64 activities that were completed by the end of the year or will be by end of July 2019, of which 40 are ABS Capex, three are ABS Opex, 13 are LDI Capex, one is LDI Opex and the remainder are funded externally.

21. There are three activities that are in progress but are delayed (amber), one activity that is significantly delayed (red) and two activities that have been cancelled and deferred in quarter four (grey). Activities that are delayed, on hold or not delivered are discussed below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity name</th>
<th>RAG status</th>
<th>Activity status</th>
<th>Explanation and mitigation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Renew car parks – Golf Road Domain and Wingate Reserve</td>
<td>Red</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Design works for all car parks except the upper car park at Blockhouse Bay Recreational Reserve have been completed but there is not enough money to start physical works, as follows:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Golf Road (two car parks), detailed design documentation has been completed. Next steps are to secure additional budget for physical works based on engineer’s estimate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Exminster Road car park, detailed design documentation has been completed. Next steps are to secure additional funds for physical works as per engineer’s estimate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Blockhouse Bay Recreational Reserve (two car parks - lower and upper), detailed design documentation has been completed for the lower carpark and the upper car park is still in the investigation stage. Next steps are to secure additional for lower car park based on the engineer's estimate and complete the investigation work for the upper carpark.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carpark renewals – Blockhouse Bay Recreation Reserve and Mason Park</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Detailed designed has been completed and engineers estimate including tender documentation are being prepared. Next step is to appoint a physical works contractor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motu Manawa Holly Street to Eastdale Road – Install walkway</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Consultants have been engaged undertake design of the next stage of the walkway. The next step will be to discuss concept design with the local board.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Lynn Transit Laneway Stage 2</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>It has been established that McCrae Lane is not an Auckland Council asset. An easement exists which limits the extent of any renewal work that can be completed by Auckland Council, and the permission of private asset owners is required to enable any renewal work to be completed. Next steps will include communication with all stakeholders and governors to ensure all parties understand the ownership structure of the lane, and how the easement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item 22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Blockhouse Bay Beach Reserve – renew park fences</strong></td>
<td>Grey Cancelled</td>
<td>This project cancelled as Operational Management and Maintenance will deliver with minor minor capex works needed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rewarewa Pathways – design phase</strong></td>
<td>Grey Cancelled</td>
<td>Community Facility staff previously recommended transferring the LDI Capex funds currently allocated here to Auckland Transport to deliver pedestrian access from Rewarewa boardwalk to Rewarewa bridge via the existing McNaughton Way. The board did not support that, but there has been no further progress in identifying any alternative option and staff have now cancelled the project.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Community Leases work programme**

22. In the Community Leases work programme, there are two activities that were completed by the end of the year or will be by end of July 2019. There are two lease renewals and two new building leases that have been deferred.

23. The new lease for the property at 33-37 Eastdale Road is in progress with an amber RAG status. "This item is pending a formal report to be prepared on the outcome of the public notification and will be presented to the local board in September 2019."

24. Public notification of council's intention to grant a new community lease for this facility is underway. A formal report to the board on the outcome of the public notification will be presented in September 2019. This lease project is deferred to the 2019/20 work programme.

**Infrastructure and Environment Services work programme**

25. In the Infrastructure and Environment Services work programme, there are thirteen activities that were completed by the end of the year or will be by end of July 2019, most of which were delivered by the EcoMatters Environment Trust as part of a three-year funding agreement with the local board.

26. The Manukau Harbour Forum is in progress with an amber RAG status. This work programme was not able to be delivered within this financial year due to the governance and management review not beginning until June 2019, and the symposium and community forum event being rescheduled from June to August 2019. Accrual of the 2018/2019 budget allocation for the symposium event will occur to cover costs.

**Local Economic Development work programme**

27. In the Local Economic Development work programme, there are two activities that were completed by the end of the year or will be by end of July 2019. These were the Whau business pop-up school and the Young Enterprise Scheme.

28. The Whau Local Economic Development Work Programme has a red status and is on hold. The local board declined to adopt a refreshed version of the Programme prepared by ATEED staff in 2018. Further discussions between staff around review and re-work of the document to meet the local board’s expectations were unable to progress in time to enable completion of the activity in Quarter four.

**Deferred activities**

29. As part of the local board funding policy, activities funded through the Locally Driven Initiatives (LDI) operating fund that were not delivered in 2018/2019 will be deferred into 2019/2020 work programmes.
Ngā whakaaweawe me ngā tirohanga a te rōpū Kaunihera
Council group impacts and views
30. When developing the work programmes council group impacts and views are presented to the boards. As this is an information only report there are no further impacts identified.

Ngā whakaaweawe ā-rohe me ngā tirohanga a te poari ā-rohe
Local impacts and local board views
31. This report informs the Whau Local Board of the performance for quarter ending 30 June 2019 and the performance for the 2018/2019 financial year.

Tauākī whakaaweawe Māori
Māori impact statement
32. Planning for Matariki events in libraries, community centres, houses and hubs has been underway ready for implementation early in quarter one, recognising the importance of Matariki to Māori living in the Whau.
33. Engagement around the new Avondale integrated library and community centre has involved significant engagement between staff and mana whenua with a commitment to ensure ongoing meaningful input from mana whenua.
34. Waitākere ki tua has now been completed and was adopted by the local board in March with an additional allocation of funding to enable immediate some of the report’s key findings to progress without delay. A shared broker across the three western local boards is one of the key components of Waitākere ki tua to be implemented in Quarter one.
35. Staff are in regular contact with the marae staff at the Kelston Deaf school regarding the opening of the new marae in August 2019. Reporting on the noho marae from Generation Ignite will be provided in Q1 2019/2020. Ngapuhi Te Runanga-A-Iwi o Ngapuhi is reconnecting with Kelston Hub in Quarter one for planning purposes. The Māori elders group has been busy with openings and blessings of events around the Whau area. The group has also been guiding others to help with all the requests to conduct blessings and karakia.
36. The Avondale kaumatua roopu held their first hui in Avondale to establish a roopu for local Avondale elders. The Kelston kaumatua roopu made a deputation presentation at the June 2019 local board business meeting.

Ngā ritenga ā-pūtea
Financial implications
37. This report is provided to enable the Whau Local Board to monitor the organisation’s progress and performance in delivering the 2018/2019 work programmes and to report this to the public. This report is for information only and therefore there are no financial implications associated with this report.

Financial performance
38. Auckland Council currently has a number of bonds quoted on the NZ Stock Exchange (NZX). As a result, the Council is subject to obligations under the NZX Main Board & Debt Market Listing Rules and the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013 sections 97 and 461H. These obligations restrict the release of annual financial reports and results until the Auckland Council Group results are released to the NZX – on or about 30 September. Due to these obligations the financial performance attached to the quarterly report is excluded from the public.
Ngā raru tūpono me ngā whakamaurutanga
Risks and mitigations
39. While the risk of non-delivery of the entire work programme is rare, the likelihood for risk relating to individual activities does vary. Capital projects for instance, are susceptible to more risk as on-time and on-budget delivery is dependent on weather conditions, approvals (e.g. building consents) and is susceptible to market conditions.

40. Information about any significant risks and how they are being managed and/or mitigated is addressed in the 'Activities with significant issues' section

Ngā koringa ā-muri
Next steps
41. Deferral of budgets of unfinished activities will be added into 2019/2020 work programmes by quarter one reporting.

Ngā tāpirihanga
Attachments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>WLB Q4 Work Programme Update</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>WLB Q4 Financial Performance Summary (Under Separate Cover) - CONFIDENTIAL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ngā kaihaina
Signatories
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Mary Binney - Senior Local Board Advisor - Whau</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authoriser</td>
<td>Glenn Boyd - Relationship Manager Henderson-Massey, Waitakere Ranges, Whau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Activity Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>191</td>
<td>Citizenship Ceremonies - Whau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>192</td>
<td>Anzac &amp; Local Civic Events - Whau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>193</td>
<td>Event Partnership Fund - Whau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>194</td>
<td>Movies in Parks - Whau</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision made</th>
<th>Lead Dept / Unit for CDC</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>204</td>
<td>Blockhouse Bay Community House, Funding and Licence year 3</td>
<td>Funding Agreement: Blockhouse Bay Community Centre incorporated to facilitate and deliver work plan outcomes, including activities and programmes at Blockhouse Bay Community Centre for the years 2016-2019, commenced 1 July 2016 and terminating 30 June 2019. Operational funding amount to be adjusted annually in accordance with Auckland Council’s agreed inflationary mechanism once confirmed. Licence to Occupy and Manage: Blockhouse Bay Community Centre incorporated for operation of Blockhouse Bay Community Centre for the years 2016-2018, commenced 1 July 2016 and terminating 30 June 2019.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated for FY2018/2019 Q4 Workshop for funding decision re 2019/2020 term</td>
<td>CS: ACE Community Places</td>
<td>$20,369 ABS: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Ocean</td>
<td>Blockhouse Bay Community Centre has had an increase in centre class participation, as well as a number of new groups looking rooms to deliver new classes and activities. A suggestion box has been set up inside the centre for new class and one-off workshop ideas. This will also be available via social media platforms to reach more of the community. This will assist the centre staff to find the areas of need and interest within the community. At the most recent School Holiday Programme, participants completed a set of murals to be displayed in the foyer of the centre. Planning for the annual presentation has started and will be presented in Q4.</td>
<td>The Regional Hui was held on 7 June 2019 with over 30 participants attending. This was the first community led delivered Hui by partners in the northern region. The main objective was to bring together community places teams to share information, ask questions and learn from each other. A highlight in Q4 from the Blockhouse Bay Community Centre was free ‘Tech Help’ sessions, held weekly on a Wednesday afternoon. They are run by a group of students from Auckland International College. Most of the people who attend these sessions are the elderly community members. The Centre staff received positive feedback regarding the competence and help provided with technology problems. Many of the participants come on a regular basis and have formed bonds with the students.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205</td>
<td>Green Bay Community House, Funding and Licence year 3</td>
<td>Funding agreement: Green Bay Community House incorporated to facilitate and deliver work plan outcomes, including activities and programmes at Green Bay Community House for the years 2016-2019, commenced 1 July 2016 and terminating 30 June 2019. Operational funding amount to be adjusted annually in accordance with Auckland Council’s agreed inflationary mechanism once confirmed. Licence to Occupy and Manage: Green Bay Community House incorporated for operation of the Green Bay Community House for the years 2016-2019, commenced 1 July 2016 and terminating 30 June 2019.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated for FY2018/2019 Q4 Workshop for funding decision re 2019/2020 term</td>
<td>CS: ACE Community Places</td>
<td>$36,176 ABS: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Ocean</td>
<td>The Composting workshop held on 23 February 2019 was fully booked (40 participants) with 33 participants attending on the day. Staff are following up with some of the participants to engage on an ongoing basis. Zumba Gold, a fitness group for older people, has reached capacity with many referrals coming through ACC. The Community House do not have any other timeslots for the group that might suit the tutor, so will be working with her to help find an alternate venue. Two new groups have begun in term one - a mediation group and Boxing for Kidneys and Adults. The Community House continues to get many requests for space to run groups but our peak times are always booked, with a lot of bookings for private time at the weekends. Planning for the annual presentation has started and will be presented in Q4.</td>
<td>The Regional Hui was held on 7 June 2019 with over 30 participants attending. This was the first community led delivered Hui by partners in the northern region. The main objective was to bring together community places teams to share information, ask questions and learn from each other. Green Bay Community House has had new classes start at the beginning of the year with particular attention to Plantation Boxing, a continuation of the community boxing classes being held three times a week over the last four years. The group has now had to cease due to the tutors moving on, so staff are looking for another community based group to take this time slot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>207</td>
<td>Kelson Community Hub, Funding and Licence year 2</td>
<td>Funding Agreement Kelson Community Hub incorporated to facilitate and deliver work plan outcomes, including activities and programmes at Kelson Community Hub for the years 2017-2019, commenced 1 July 2017 and terminating on 30 June 2019. Operational funding amount to be adjusted annually in accordance with Auckland Council’s agreed inflationary mechanism once confirmed Licence to Occupy and Manage: Kelson Community Hub incorporated to operate the Kelson Community Hub for the years 2017-2018, commenced 1 July 2017 and terminating on 30 June 2019.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated for FY2018/2019 Q4 Workshop for funding decision re 2019/2020 term</td>
<td>CS: ACE Community Places</td>
<td>$30,176 ABS: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Ocean</td>
<td>Project Whenua started at the end of March 2019. Topics include ‘The use of herbs for cooking, relaxing and cleaning’ and ‘Compost and vertical gardens’, which has been requested to run again this year. Staff are looking at moving funding for it to continue in the hope to get financial support for home visits to provide support to families who are interested in growing their own vegetable gardens. New ideas have been introduced to ‘La Tauranga’, where groups of different ethnic backgrounds are encouraged to share their culture, food, children stories and music. Planning for the annual presentation has started and will be presented in Q4.</td>
<td>The Regional Hui was held on 7 June 2019 with over 30 participants attending. This was the first community led delivered Hui by partners in the northern region. The main objective was to bring together community places teams to share information, ask questions and learn from each other. The Māori elders group have been busy with open days and events around the Whau area. There 10-12 events coming up in the next month. Other events are being planned for the end of the year and there are events being held in the community level. Since starting last year in June 2018, the Tauranga group is more active and has received many participants. Wednesday is at full capacity and new participants are continuing to join the club.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Required</th>
<th>Lead Dept / Unit or COG</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>270</td>
<td>Operational Grant - Te</td>
<td>Fund Potage Ceramics Trust to operate Te Toi Uku, a museum collection of New Zealand ceramics and pottery-making equipment.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CS: ACE, Arts &amp; Culture</td>
<td>$81,384 ARS, Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>March saw 476 visitors, which is the largest monthly number since May 2018. This included around 270 year two children from Avianca School. The children learned about the history of clay in the region and how Crown Lynn became a successful local enterprise. There was an opportunity to handle clay and participate in a scavenger hunt. The museum curators created a Crown Lynn display at Anzac School as part of their outreach. Q3 also saw the preparation of a new exhibit featuring clay works from year seven New Lynn School students.</td>
<td>In Q4, curator-director of Te Toi Uku left with short notice. The volunteer board recouped the role and are now in their final stages of recruitment for the new curator. During this time the museum has had reduced hours, opening only on Saturdays to the public. The Crown Lynn Collectors Market in April 2019 received $1000 from attendees in donations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>271</td>
<td>Operational Grant - Ambrosio Klin Site Projects</td>
<td>Fund Potage Ceramics Trust to develop projects in relation to the Ambrosio Klin site to increase community engagement and awareness of the history of the klin and associated clay works.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CS: ACE, Arts &amp; Culture</td>
<td>$15,000 ARS, Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>The Ambrosio Klin: 80 percent of visitors interested in the Klin’s function and its industrial running and output. Interpretations for the Klin are complete and funding is being sought to cover the costs of printing and constructing the display panels.</td>
<td>In Q4, the curator-director of Te Toi Uku left with short notice. The volunteer board recouped the role and are now in their final stages of recruitment for the new curator. During this time the museum has had reduced hours, opening only on Saturdays to the public.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>272</td>
<td>Local Arts Broker Programme - Whau</td>
<td>Fund the Whau Community Arts Broker over a two year period to develop strategic relationships and contacts within the creative community, and support a range of community-led arts activities including temporary street projects and activations.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CS: ACE, Arts &amp; Culture</td>
<td>$85,000 LDG, Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Over February and March 2019 Cathy Livensmore met with representative groups in the Whau and created exchanges between Māori culture and Māori culture through hikanga and wānanga. Three further projects commenced in March 2019. The Whau Arts Space Fei! Goods opened with an exhibition in collaboration with the EkoWest Festival featuring 13 local artists and a workshop. The Kitchen launched and six writing and food workshops have occurred across Albert Eden and the Whau Local Board. Ryan Sun’s Huntland, a plastic bottle collection artwork appeared at the Movers in the Parks in the Whau.</td>
<td>In Q4, Hikatea taps o Mihin’s intergenerational collaboration with Age Concern culminated in nine workshops involving residents of the Rosehill and Marist Retirement Villages, Avondale Intermediate students, two members of the public, all 105 participants contributed to the creation of 206 titles. Cathy Livensmore celebrated the culmination of a six-month cultural exchange through music project between Māori and local migrant communities that involved 200 diverse community members. Suli Masi wrote his play Tales of a Princess, co-developed with the youth congregation of the New Lynn Methodist Church, around Auckland performing at 8 sites including the New Lynn Methodist Church and the Avondale Community Centre. Three weaving workshops were undertaken, two teaching traditional Māori weaving in Korotua and New Lynn and one teaching Fijian weaving in Avondale.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>276</td>
<td>Green Bay Community House LDI Initial funding - year 3</td>
<td>Additional funding to Green Bay Community House to assist with delivery of the Funding Agreement for the years 2016-2019, commenced 1 July 2016 and terminating 30 June 2019.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated for 2018/2019</td>
<td>CS: ACE, Community Places</td>
<td>$10,000 LDG, Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>The Strategic Broker connected with local organisations. Conversations continued with Haururu Housing to involve and engage its residents in activities. Engagement with local residents and small business owners. A new “Steps to Happiness Eating” workshop for parents who are concerned about their children’s eating habits was fully booked. A paddling workshop was delivered called “Introducing to growing microgreens.” Further workshops will be held in Q4.</td>
<td>The Green Bay Community House collaborated with Green Bay Life Church who hosted the “In Case of Emergency” (ICE) workshops starting in June 2019. They approached local schools and local organisations and have received 12 registrations out of desired 20. Engagement with local residents and small business owners happened and staff have been testing several formats of weekly paid workshops and currently focusing on a weekday lunchtime session which is progressing well. A total of $3,500 was awarded in the Fund in March 2019. Decisions on grants allocations will be made by the local board in Q4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>371</td>
<td>Community Empowerment (Whau)</td>
<td>Support local community groups through contestable grant funding.</td>
<td></td>
<td>CS: ACE, Community Empowerment</td>
<td>$150,000 LDG, Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Points</th>
<th>Lead Dept / Unit</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>760</td>
<td>Venue Hire Services Delivery - WH</td>
<td>Provide, manage and promote venues for hire, and the activities and opportunities they offer by - managing the customer centric booking and access process - continue to develop and deliver service improvement initiatives - aligning activity to local board priorities through management of the fees and charges framework. These include whether activities contribute to community outcomes offered by not-for-profit and community groups</td>
<td>Q4 - Local Board to approve fees and charges schedule for 2019/2020</td>
<td>CS: ACE Community Places</td>
<td>$0</td>
<td>ABS Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>During Q3, staff updated the local board on fees and charges for 2019/2020 Community drop in sessions were held across Auckland to help venues with the online booking process. This also gave venues the opportunity to raise any questions they had with the hire process or the venue they hire. Bookings for 2019/2020 opened on 5 March 2019. By the end of the day there were over 18,000 bookings across the network. 61 per cent was self-service online bookings. Hiner satisfaction shows that 64 per cent would recommend the venues they have visited within the local board area. The statistics are based on the first eight months of 2018/2019. During Q4, 87 per cent of venues indicated that they would recommend the venues they have visited. Participant numbers have increased by 14 per cent and booking hours have increased by 8 per cent compared to the same period last year. The top two activity types for Whau were arts and cultural events and fitness, sport and recreation. During Q4, Google analytics results show that New Lynn Community Centre is within the top five most searched venues.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>788</td>
<td>Build capacity funding for community leadership and capability building programmes</td>
<td>Fund community Waikareko iwi</td>
<td>CS: ACE Community Empowerment</td>
<td>$50,000 LDI Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Auckland Collaboration group have met regularly. They continued to support groups with their events, including activation of the Central Reserve, community garden and acknowledging the Christchurch tragedy with women tying scarfs on trees. A cultural event is being planned for Q4. Glenmore Trust governance and trustee training is on-going. The total secured funding from Foundation North for the hub coordinator role. Communication has increased with more social media, website activity, flyers and face to face contact with the school community. Families are attending the activities provided. The Kelston community developer is strengthening relationships between local schools and the hub The Strategic Fitter attended three meetings in Q4. From these meetings, the collaboration group has been reamed as Avondale Neighbour, enabling the wider community to participate in localised planning of activities and events. Due to the winter months and some activation events being funded by Panuku, the cultural and food festival will be held in Q1 2019/2020. Staff met with the CEO of Community Waikareko iwi to discuss the positive outcomes and review where the need is in specific areas of the 2019/2020 work programmes and the allocation of community developers in Kelston, Avondale, Glenmore and New Windsor. Due to under spend in other departments, the local board allocated additional funding to both Glenmore and Kelston hubs to support locally led initiatives. The outcomes of these initiatives will be reported on in Q1 2019/2020.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>815</td>
<td>Community-led placemaking for Aotearoa - the Whau</td>
<td>Fund Empirical Services to deliver the Kai Across The Whau programme to - promote and celebrate locally driven kai projects - connect and bring together key stakeholders to discuss strengths, barriers and opportunities for local food growing and distribution - delve resources through participatory budgeting</td>
<td>CS: ACE Community Empowerment</td>
<td>$15,000 LDI Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>The Free Food Providers in the Whau project in February 2019 provided an opportunity to connect with representatives from five free food providers across the Whau. The focus was on free meals and food parcels. The first meeting had 15 representatives from 11 organisations, where attendees discussed challenges faced by providers. A Facebook group, Whau Food Providers, shares advice and information on a regular basis across the network. The annual Kai Whau community participatory budgeting process applications will close in April 2019. The voting process is scheduled to be completed by 12 May 2019. Kai Across the Whau participated in Whau Libraries Family Day event in March 2019. The Kelston Community Hub resumed the ‘Creative Cooks’ cooking classes funded through 2017/2018 Kai Whau participatory budgeting process. The annual Kai Whau community participatory budgeting process is complete. Eleven applications were received and a total of $5,000 was awarded across six community groups. 120 people participated in the voting process with a panel of six representatives who are involved in activities in the local board area. A meeting took place as part of the Free Food Providers project. Leon Titelihana spoke about the implementation of the Reaching Fridge Concept in Henderson and hosted a free microgreens workshop. The Encounter Hope Centre in New Lynn provided information about their food bank services and how it connects with other free food providers. The Kelston Hub hosted five sessions of its ‘Creative Cooks’ cooking classes, delivered by community from diverse cultural backgrounds and promoted a healthy, affordable, and home-cooked meals.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Activity Name</td>
<td>Activity Description</td>
<td>Further Decision Points</td>
<td>Lead Dept./ Unit or COO</td>
<td>Budget</td>
<td>Activity Status</td>
<td>RAG</td>
<td>Q3 Commentary</td>
<td>Q4 Commentary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>831</td>
<td>Increase Diverse Participation: Pacific and Ethnic Voices</td>
<td>Deliver a work programme to increase social inclusion, connection and participation in decision-making by our ethnically diverse communities. - Leaders in the Pacific, Chinese, Indian and other ethnic and resettled communities contribute to the future of Whau - Complete and progress delivery of an Ethnic Peopless Plan - Initial process of developing of Whau Pacific Peoples Plan</td>
<td>CS; ACE Community Empowerment</td>
<td>$20,000</td>
<td>L01; Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Ruakura Consulting presented the draft Whau Pacific Peoples plan at a local board workshop. Amendments were recommended and the final report will be presented to the local board in April 2019. Themes identified in the Pacific plan are similar to those identified previously in the Ethnic plan engagements. In Q4, the Pacific and Ethnic plans will be launched.</td>
<td>In April 2019, staff worked in collaboration with the Community Grants team to deliver two grants workshops, for Pacific Peoples and for Ethnic Peoples. Twenty-five Pacific people and 17 Chinese and ethnic peoples attended the respective workshops. From these workshops, some participants applied to the recent Quick Response grants round and were successful first time applicants. The Whau Pacific Plan was launched in May at the New Lynn Community Centre. More than 130 people were in attendance, mainly representatives of those who were engaged during the consultation phase of its plan’s development. The launch of the Whau Pacific Wardens was also celebrated as part of the overall launch event. The Whau Ethnic Peoples Plan was launched in June and more than 80 people attended. Kate Sewell, the consultant who prepared the plan, delivered a well-received overview presentation of the plan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>834</td>
<td>E To: responding to the key aspirations and priorities for Māori in the Whau Local Board area</td>
<td>Work with mana whenua, Whau local board and local Māori to respond to - key aspirations and priorities for Māori in the area - develop relationships and agreed shared goals with mana whenua, local Māori and key Māori organisations - develop a local response to the aspirations of Māori e.g. marae, wharenui, te reo, strengthening local residents and local board relationships</td>
<td>CS; ACE Community Empowerment</td>
<td>$15,000</td>
<td>L01; Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>In March 2019 the local board adopted The Whaukere ki Tua report. Implementation of some of the recommendations will commence in Q4. Staff met with Generation Ignite to discuss new marae plans to enable rangatahi to experience marae protocols and participate in planned, Kelston kaumatua connected with Māori elders in Avondale and Green Bay. Staff connected leaders to elders in the social housing and an Avondale rest home. The strategic broker facilitated a meeting with Ngāpuhi Te Ruangai-Awe or Ngāpuhi general manager delivery and Kelston Hub manager to manaaki projects for Māori elders in the north and locality. Outcomes from these connections will be reported on in Q4. The marae at the Kelston East Education centre will open in May 2019.</td>
<td>Staff are in regular contact with the marae staff at the Kelston East School regarding the opening in August 2019. Reporting on the noro marae from Generation Ignite will be provided in Q1 2019/2020. Ngāpuhi Te Ruangai-Awe or Ngāpuhi is reconnecting with Kelston Hub in Q1 2019/2020, for planning purposes. The Avondale kaumāturanga whānui held their first hui in Avondale to establish a roopū for local Avondale elders. The Kelston Kaumāturanga roopū held their first hui in Avondale to establish a roopū for local Kelston elders. The Kelston Kaumāturanga roopū made a presentation at the June 2019 local board business meeting. The Strategic Broker worked alongside the strategy and planning advisor and met with wet, mātaawhā and council staff regarding the current and future plans for the Avondale multi-purpose facility and library.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Points</th>
<th>Lead Dept / Unit or COO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>846</td>
<td>Community-led placemaking - neighbourhood and town centre development projects</td>
<td>Support placemaking projects that foster community identity and encourage shared action, including: support community-led planning and placemaking that engage the diverse communities across the Whau; initiatives are designed and delivered locally in Kaitaia, Avondale, New Lynn and Glenavon and communities are engaged in design processes. Enabling the establishment of the Glenavon Hub co-ordinator. Support for an inclusive approach to work with older adults across the Whau to encourage community programming to reduce social isolation and increase connectedness (Neighbourhood community led projects of heritage activities that highlight the historical experience of Maori, Pacific and Ethnic communities (cross council approach ACIE). Facilitation of workshops and Co-facilitation of workshops: Embedding good principles of design deliver key recommendations from Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design (CPTED) assessment report of the Avondale and the New Lynn town centre). Inform the communities of the agreed actions from the CPTED assessment report-Promote and collaborate with community and government agencies, to support adequate emergency shelter and support services for the homeless.</td>
<td>CS, ACE, Community Empowerment</td>
<td>$115,000</td>
<td>LDR, Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Ocean</td>
<td>The service and asset planning advisor and the strategic broker have provided Avondale facility updates at 13 meetings this quarter, with the Avondale communities and stakeholders. This approach is to ensure that the Avondale community facility and library development communications, working with at risk and matesakear, are consistent and transparent. Meetings have focused on relationship building, initial design brief and consistent face to face update sessions with the community at Avondale sites. In response to ongoing safety issues in Avondale Place and the New Lynn town centre, staff supported a wider safety meeting of agencies and NGOs in February 2019. A working group met in March 2019 and agreed to implement an action plan to deliver activities focusing on place-making and a visibility deployment plan. Staff reached an agreement with Generation Ignite to coordinate and facilitate the Whau Homeless Network Forum. A funding agreement will be completed in Q4 Whau Pacific volunteers have been police vetted and trained. The project will coincide with the launch of the Whau Pacific Peoples plan. The Glenavon Community Trust employed a hub coordinator. The Mission of &quot;Doing good stuff together&quot; provided a platform for other projects to be implemented including governance training, happy hour with parents and children and pathway workshops focusing on CV writing and job interviews. The Trust provided a progress update to the board in Q3.</td>
<td>Staff have an agreement with Safe neighbourhoods to initiate safety initiatives in the the community of Ambros and Linlar Lane. Training of the new Whau Pacific Volunteers group was completed and the initiatives officially launched on 31 May. With a co-ordinated approach the NZ Police will deploy patrols in the high risk areas including Ambros/Linar Lane. An action plan for addressing rough sleeping and antisocial behaviour in Ambros Place, Linlar Lane and the New Lynn Community Centre was launched in May 2019. This plan was created with input from local body corporates, police, Sport Waitakere, Generation Ignite, Te Toi Uku, Neighbourhood Support Waitakere and the New Lynn Community Centre. Generation Ignite will co-ordinate the network of local homelessness initiatives. Further network meetings will be reported on in Q2 2019/20.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 850 | Youth Connections | Youth Connections will: | | CS, ACE, Community Empowerment | $32,400 | LDR, Opex | Completed | Ocean | The funding agreement has been completed for Creative Souls under Whau the People and the project is underway. | The project has been completed with Creative Souls. Due to the delays in getting the funding out to beneficiaries they are still in the early stages of the project. |

Note: the 2018/2019 budget figure shown for this activity includes the $30,000 originally approved plus $2,400 from Bevan 2017/2018.

---

Auckland Council’s Year End and Quarterly Performance Report: Whau Local Board for quarter four 2018/2019
### Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Points</th>
<th>Lead Dept</th>
<th>Unit or CCD</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>852</td>
<td>Increase diverse participation: Youth capacity building</td>
<td>Fund project management to facilitate and deliver Whau youth providers network and associated youth-led activities including Whau Youth Awards and Youth Week Activities; Whau Youth Board and Related Activitie; Tutu’s leadership training programme for Pacific young people</td>
<td>CS, ACE</td>
<td>Community Empowerment</td>
<td>$43,000</td>
<td>LDL: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>The West Auckland Pasifika Forum (WAPFF) has progressed towards their goal of becoming a charitable entity by 30 June 2019. Staff provided support to the WAPFF operational planning team in preparation of the Tutu youth leadership programme. The programme will run during the 2019/20 academic year. Seventy students and teachers from eight west Auckland schools and selected members from the Whau, Henderson, Massey and Waiuku Ranges Local Boards attended the summit launch event in March 2019. The youth board is currently recruiting. A team building and planning retreat is scheduled for May 2019. A beach clean-up and youth awards events are planned for Q4. The Whau Youth Providers Network are organising a youth workers symposium in Q4. Tutu started in March 2019 and has an average of 71 students at each module. Two community days have taken place one in Avondale at the community centre and nearby rest homes. Camp and graduation are scheduled for July 2019. A presentation to local board is planned for July 2019. Whau Youth awards was part of Youth week celebrations and a collaboration between the Whau youth board and the Whau youth provider network. There were 15 awards and 80 guests who took part in the night. The Whau youth board held their annual retreat in May 2019 where the deputy chair ran a workshop on the role of the local board. Team building, strategy and planning were also on the agenda. The youth board also had a meet and greet with the local board prior to the last business meeting and observed the meeting in action. The monthly Whau youth provider network is well attended and full of robust discussion and collaboration as well as information sharing.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1010</td>
<td>New Lynn and Avondale Community Centre programme delivery</td>
<td>Plan, develop, deliver and evaluate a programme of activities that: • aligns to the outcome area of “Great neighbourhoods with strong community connections, capacity and voice”, with a strong focus on delivering for diverse communities, growing out young people and health and wellbeing for our communities • ensures community participation • enables more residents to feel connected to their community spaces • allows participants to learn, grow and come together to have fun</td>
<td>CS, ACE</td>
<td>Community Places</td>
<td>$80,051</td>
<td>ABS: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>The Whau Local Board’s Senior High Tea at the New Lynn RSA was attended by senior citizens who utilise the Community Centre in New Lynn and Avondale and provided an opportunity for staff to connect with this community. In response to the events in Christchurch, parents from the Avondale Community Centre’s refugee and resent playgroup, supported by Community Wellbeing, hung 50 flags on the trees outside the community centre. As part of the Proud Centres activations, two “Rainbow Rhythmme” sessions ran at the New Lynn Community Centre. Participant numbers were higher than the regular sessions that ran at the library weekly, with new families coming along that had attended other Proud Centres activations. Some of the families attending had never visited the community centre before, and asked about other activities they could join at the community centre. Kanuku Crawler programme started in early June over ten weeks and was delivered by a local weaver, who taught traditional tikanga cloak making with contemporary materials. The New Lynn Community Centre and social enterprise MPORRR offered low-cost exercise classes, which have gained in participation. The Community Empowerment Unit, Police, Neighbourhood Support and residents and New Lynn Community Centre are part of the safety planning team working with Ambros可以 residents to build a community network. The Library and community centre ran a wakanga and hygiene class and morning tea for Mal including 35 adults and 40 children. The Shared Garden Space Avondale had 52 volunteers and participants. They planted sowings at a neighbours Day event and the first harvest went to the weekly Community Lunch. The Regional Hu was held in June 2019 with 30 participants and was the first community led delivered hai by partners in the northern region. The objective was to bring together community places teams to share information.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7 / 30

Whau Local Board 28 August 2019

---

Auckland Council’s Year End and Quarterly Performance Report: Whau Local Board for quarter four 2018/2019

Page 221
### Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Points</th>
<th>Lead Dept / Unit or OCO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1268</td>
<td>Apply the empowered communities approach – connecting communities (WH)</td>
<td>Broker strategic collaborative relationships and resources within the community. This includes five key activity areas: 1. Engaging communities - reaching out to less accessible and diverse groups, focusing on capacity building and inclusion - supporting existing community groups and relationships. 2. Strengthen community-led placemaking and planning initiatives - empowering communities to provide input into placemaking initiatives - influence decision making on place-based planning and implementation. This includes urban revitalisation activities, collaborating with relevant council departments and council-controlled organisations. 3. Enabling council-sustained groups to gain access to operational and technical expertise and identity and address barriers to community empowerment. 4. Responding to the aspirations of mana whenua, mataawaka, marae and Marae organisations. <em>This does not replace or duplicate any stand-alone local board Māori responsiveness activities.</em> 5. Reporting back - local board members on progress in activity areas 1-4.</td>
<td>CS, ACE, Community Improvement</td>
<td>$0</td>
<td>LDI, Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Staff supported the Glenavon Hub co-ordinator at a meeting with Foundation North where they secured $25,000 funding. In response to the community indicating that clearer grants information is needed at a face-to-face level, staff and the grants advisor have organised two workshops in Q4. To date, 20 people have registered to attend the Pacific grants workshop. Outcomes will be reported in Q4.</td>
<td>In April 2019, two grants workshops with participants stopping for quick response grants were held. The Strategic Broker and Library staff supported local Pacific people, as first time applicants to navigate the Smarty grants system. Individuals from Atariki, Muslim and the deaf community met with staff to explore support for local projects.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Community Facilities Build Maintain Renew

| 623 | Whau Full Facilities Contracts | The Full Facilities maintenance contracts include all buildings, parks and open space assets, sports fields, coastal management and storm damage. | No further decisions are anticipated | CF, Operations | $445,359 | ABS, Opex | In progress | Green | The last three months in Whau have been nothing short of amazing! Our relationships with various departments, in particular AIMS Services, Survey and Design, Stakeholder Advisory have developed and strengthened where we have started to bring some change into the Whau Local Board area. We were also kept busy gearing up for streetscapes, with our contractors taking over grass mowing and vegetation control from 1 April. We have, together with our contractor, compiled a list of actions for our ANZAC sites so they are presented nicely to the public on the 25 April. Moving forward into the next quarter, we will continue to ensure that our contractors are meeting their service delivery outcomes. |

| 830 | Whau Arboriculture Contracts | The Arboriculture maintenance contracts include tree management and maintenance. | No further decisions are anticipated | CF, Operations | $152,151 | ABS, Opex | In progress | Green | Wait conditions towards the later part of quarter two gave way to drought conditions over much of February into March. The conditions provided a challenge to keep trees planted during last winter sufficiently watered. Regrettably, the drought conditions had an adverse effect on some larger trees through parks and streets. The conditions did allow easy access into parks to undertake the summer weeding programme. As the weather turns, there will be a transition from park tree maintenance, back to a street tree maintenance focus. Quarter four will also see the commencement of the annual tree replanting programme to replace those trees removed over the preceding year. | Relationships have continued to be strengthened with other departments and stakeholders. Coming into the fourth quarter Community Facilities have successfully transitioned into Streetscapes Green which commenced on 1 April. The contractor has worked hard to deliver on this contract to achieve high level outcomes. Rainfall in this quarter has been less than average which has allowed the contractor continued ease of access onto terrains and parks. The upcoming Streetscapes Clean contract starting on 1 July has been a focal point during quarter four. During this three months Maintenance Delivery Coordinators and contractors have received comprehensive training on the specifications and expectations. Overall the parks and reserves are looking great. The sites for the Anzac Day events were prepared, however due to unforeseen circumstances these events were cancelled. The 2018/2019 financial year has generally been a good year, with solid progress being made. A warm autumn saw continued tree growth take into the season. With the diminishing daylight hours the seasonal requests to prune trees to improve sunlight into properties increased. Requests to prune trees to avoid or reduce leaf drop also increased. This may be associated with street sweeping. By the end of June the Arboricultural team were well into replacement tree planting. The progress was very pleasing as early planting allows the best chance for tree establishment. |
### Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Points</th>
<th>Lead Dept / Unit or CCO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>832</td>
<td>Whau Ecological Rehabilitation Contracts</td>
<td>The Ecological Restoration maintenance contracts include pest plant and animal pest management within ecologically significant parks and reserves.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Operations</td>
<td>$132,596</td>
<td>ABS: Opex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2221</td>
<td>Archibald Park - renew sport fields</td>
<td>Renew sport fields. Detail to be provided by the end of the calendar year. Year one - investigation and scoping (including options for an increase level of service to process to the local board) Year 2 onwards - physical works.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$55,000</td>
<td>ABS: Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2222</td>
<td>Avondale Library - replace CCTV system</td>
<td>Complete replacement of the current CCTV system to ensure full coverage is available when investigating incidents. The costing for this work will be further refined through the procurement process.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$26,000</td>
<td>ABS: Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2223</td>
<td>Bickhouse Bay/Liberty - renew CCTV system</td>
<td>Complete replacement of the current CCTV system to ensure full coverage is available when investigating incidents. The costing for this work will be further refined through the procurement process.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$26,000</td>
<td>ABS: Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2224</td>
<td>Bickhouse Bay Beach Reserve - renew park fences</td>
<td>Renew park fencing. Stage 1 involves investigation and scoping (including options for those assets that would benefit from an increased level of service to be proposed to the board). Physical works will commence with Stage 2. This project is a multi-year funded project to be initiated in the 2018/19 work programme.</td>
<td>No further decisions are anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$1,000</td>
<td>ABS: Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>Cancelled</td>
<td>Grey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2225</td>
<td>Bickhouse Bay Recreation Reserve - renew sports field fence</td>
<td>Renew sports field 1 fencing. Stage 1 involves investigation and scoping (identifying options for those assets that would benefit from an increased level of service to be proposed to the board). Physical works will commence with Stage 2. This project is a multi-year funded a continuation of the 2017/18 programme (previous SP/LU 2286). Renew structures including a bridge and steps at Bickhouse Dunes. Footpath sections to also be renewed. Stage 1 involves investigation and scoping (including options for those assets that would benefit from an increased level of service to be proposed to the board). Physical works will be undertaken in Stage 2. This project is a multi-year funded project and a continuation of the 2017/18 programme (previous SP/LU ID 2341).</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Project Delivery</td>
<td>$26,000</td>
<td>ABS: Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2226</td>
<td>Giffords Domain - renew park structures and footpaths</td>
<td>Renew structures including a bridge and steps at Giffords Domain. Footpath sections to also be renewed. Stage 1 involves investigation and scoping (including options for those assets that would benefit from an increased level of service to be proposed to the board). Physical works will be undertaken in Stage 2. This project is a multi-year funded project and a continuation of the 2017/18 programme (previous SP/LU ID 2341).</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$98,000</td>
<td>ABS: Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2227</td>
<td>Giffords Reserve - replace historic signage</td>
<td>Replace the historic signs at the reserve</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$15,000</td>
<td>ABS: Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Activity Name</td>
<td>Activity Description</td>
<td>Further Decision Points</td>
<td>Lead Dept / Unit or CCD</td>
<td>Budget</td>
<td>Activity Status</td>
<td>RAG</td>
<td>Q3 Commentary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2228</td>
<td>Memorial Square - renew and improve</td>
<td>Memorial Square improvements and renewals to ensure the facility is fit for purpose</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$30,000 ABS, Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status. Feedback received from the local board and this is being incorporated into the revised concept. Next steps: Revised concept for Memorial Square and surrounding areas to be finalized and then presented to the local board for review and approval.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2229</td>
<td>New Lynn Community Centre – renew facility</td>
<td>Renew facility to a fit for purpose standard</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$50,000 ABS, Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status. Working with the architect for preliminary design and scope, work in progress and for fee proposals. Discussions with sustainability team for funding for electrical and heating, ventilation and air conditioning component. More funding required. Fees proposal required from consultants. Procurement plan approved in April. Next steps: Commerce final design work and hold workshops with the local board. Tendering phase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2230</td>
<td>Olympic Park - renew sports fields</td>
<td>Renew sport fields. Investigation and design FY18; physical works FY19. This project is a continuation of the 2017/2018 programme (previous SP18 ID 2245).</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$240,000 ABS, Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status. All the physical works are complete, grass grow in for half the field is looking good but the other half is struggling to grow, contractors have come up with a plan to accelerate the grass grow for the sports field. Next steps: Installation of the long jump back and the concrete pads for shot put, once the locations are confirmed from the athletics club. Monitor the grass grow and handover the project.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2231</td>
<td>Sir James’ church - renew roof</td>
<td>Renew roof to ensure fit for purpose</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF - Project Delivery</td>
<td>$10,000 ABS, Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status. Finishing the scope of works, and completing the project initiation form, and to get the contractor on site for the pricing of the job. Next steps: To complete scope for sign off, and tendering phase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2232</td>
<td>Taramaia reserve - renew play space</td>
<td>Renew play space. Investigation and design FY18; physical works FY19. This project is a continuation of the 2017/2018 programme (previous SP18 ID 2247).</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$30,000 ABS, Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status. The playground renewal concept has been selected. Next steps: Procure the playground equipment and programme the physical works.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2233</td>
<td>Takanini Triangle - new lighting</td>
<td>Renew lighting. Year one – investigation (excluding options for sites that would benefit from an increase level of service to propose to the local board), scoring and physical works, year 2+ - physical works.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$5,000 ABS, Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status. Initiation phase. Next steps: Planning phase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2234</td>
<td>Whau, renew car parks - Blockhouse Bay Recreation Reserve and Mason Park</td>
<td>Investigate and design FY18 and physical works FY19. This project is a continuation of the 2017/2018 programme (previous SP18 ID 2252).</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$32,500 ABS, Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>Current status. Detailed design has been completed and engineers estimate including tender documentation are being prepared. Next steps: Secured additional funds based on engineer estimate prior to start the procurement works.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Path</th>
<th>Lead Dept / Unit / COG</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2235</td>
<td>Whau - renew car parks - Golf Road Domain and Whangaparaoa Reserve</td>
<td>Renew car parks at Golf Road Domain and Whangaparaoa Reserve. Investigate and design FY18 and physical works FY19. This project is a continuation of the 2017/2018 programme (previous SP18 ID 2252).</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$120,000</td>
<td>ABS: Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2236</td>
<td>Whau - renew car park furniture</td>
<td>Renew car park furniture in Mason Park and Toranawa Reserve.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$10,700</td>
<td>ABS: Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2238</td>
<td>Whau - renew park structures FY18+</td>
<td>Renew park structures in Ianston Reserve, Lawson Park, Lynwood Esplanade Reserve, Manuka Waterfall Reserve, and Rial Reserve.</td>
<td>Options to be approved by local board</td>
<td>CF: Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$10,000</td>
<td>ABS: Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2239</td>
<td>Whau - renew park walkways and paths FY18+</td>
<td>Renew park walkways and paths in Blockhouse Bay Recreation Reserve and Tony Segredo Esplanade Reserve. Investigate and design year one; physical works year two. This project is a continuation of the 2017/2018 programme (previous SP18 ID 2258).</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$87,600</td>
<td>ABS: Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2240</td>
<td>Whau - renew park walkways and paths FY18+</td>
<td>Renew park walkways and paths at Blockhouse Bay Beach Reserve, Chalmers Reserve, Copper Beach Walk, Crasgavan Park, Karaka Park, Manuka Waterfall Reserve, Manuka Park, Renouf Reserve, St Ninians Reserve, Blockhouse Beach Reserve, Chalmers Reserve, Copper Beach Walk, Crasgavan Park, and Karaka Park. Year one - investigation (including options for sites that would benefit from an increase level of service to propose to the local board), scoping and physical works, year 2 - physical works.</td>
<td>Options to be approved by local board</td>
<td>CF: Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$11,700</td>
<td>ABS: Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Attachment A**

**Item 22**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Points</th>
<th>Lead Dept / Unit or CCO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2241</td>
<td>Whau - renew play space (FY19)</td>
<td>Scoping for future years physical works. Condition 4 and 5 park play space. Priority sites identified as: Atalante Park, Chalmers Reserve, La Rosa Garden Reserve, and Mau Reserve. Alternative priority sites may be nominated by the board</td>
<td>Options to be approved by local board</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$30,000 ABS - Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: La Rosa and Mau Reserve have been scoped for renewal. Designs are currently being reviewed. Chalmers Reserve: the location of the playground will be affected by the Auckland Transport shared path project. They may help fund new playground combined with renewal budget. Next steps: Select designs for Mau and La Rosa reserve and procure the play equipment. Agree with Auckland Transport the location of the playground when they know alignment of footpath. Mau reserve will be the first playground to be renewed.</td>
<td>Current status: La Rosa and Mau Reserve playground designs are currently being reviewed, with the possibility of pushing these back a year and renewing a condition four playground instead. Chalmers Reserve: the location of the playground will be affected by the Auckland Transport shared path project. They may help fund new playground combined with renewal budget. Next steps: Provided Mau and La Rosa Reserve go ahead this year, procure the play equipment. Agree with Auckland Transport the location of the playground when they know alignment of footpath.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2242</td>
<td>Wingate Reserve - renew toilet block and changing room facility</td>
<td>Renew toilet block at Wingate Reserve. Investigation and design FY18 and physical works FY19. This project is a continuation of the 2017/2018 programme (previous SP18 ID 2980). No further decisions anticipated.</td>
<td>Options to be approved by local board</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$30,000 ABS - Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed</td>
<td>Project completed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2243</td>
<td>Whau - Renew Community Centres (FY19)</td>
<td>Scope for future years physical works identifying condition 4 and 5 community centre assets. Priority sites to be identified. Year one - investigation (including options for sites that would benefit from an increase level of service to propose to the local board). Year 2 - physical works</td>
<td>Options to be approved by local board</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$10,000 ABS - Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Initiate. Next steps: Planning - investigating extent of facilities requiring upgrade.</td>
<td>Current status: The scope is being developed by Asset Management, Intelligence Support and Investigation, and Design personnel. Next steps: Engage consultant for design.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2246</td>
<td>Te Whau Pathway Stage 3a - develop boardwalk connections</td>
<td>Develop the Te Whau Pathway boardwalk connections between Roberts Field, Kerikeri Reserve and Queen Mary Reserve, and Archibald Park. This project is a continuation of the 2017/2018 programme (previous SP18 ID 2244).</td>
<td>Options to be approved by local board</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$200,000 ABS - Capex - Growth</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Māori route application: Technical Reports and Assessment of Environmental Effects reports are being updated by the consultant according to technical reviewer feedback. Final adjustments to the pathway realignment (within the 20 metre lane) is being continued in conjunction with Auckland Transport. Realignment is being trialled and created to support the resource consent application and ongoing consultation. Consultation is ongoing. Next steps: Consultation ongoing in conjunction with Whau Coastal Walkway and Environmental Trust to enable lodgement. Assessing options to support public submissions through the notified consent process such as open day/signage.</td>
<td>Current status: The resource consent has been successfully lodged on 18 April. Project orientation site visit took place on 15 May 2019. Internal review of application underway by the resource consent team. Next steps: Currently working on providing additional information to the resource consent team prior to public notification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2247</td>
<td>Brauns Park development</td>
<td>Improve sand silt drainage and irrigation. Install lighting on field 3. This project is a continuation of the 2017/2018 programme (previous SP18 ID 2814).</td>
<td>Options to be approved by local board</td>
<td>CF - Project Delivery</td>
<td>$25,500 ABS - Capex - Growth</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed</td>
<td>Project completed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2248</td>
<td>Kan Mander Park - Install sand silt, drainage and irrigation on field 3 and 4.</td>
<td>Install sand silt, drainage and irrigation on field 3 and 4. Goal post renewal</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF - Project Delivery</td>
<td>$500,000 ABS - Capex - Growth</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed</td>
<td>Project completed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2249</td>
<td>Sidele Ponei/Seabrook Park - renew fields and develop field 2 sand silt, drainage and irrigation</td>
<td>Renew sports fields and develop field 2 sand silt, drainage and irrigation. This project is a continuation of the 2017/2018 programme (previous SP18 ID 3194).</td>
<td>Options to be approved by local board</td>
<td>CF - Project Delivery</td>
<td>$330,000 ABS - Capex - Growth</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Physical works in progress, and growth period for the grasses happening now. Next steps: Practical completion by end of May 2019, handover.</td>
<td>Project completed May 2019.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Activity Name</td>
<td>Activity Description</td>
<td>Further Decision Points</td>
<td>Lead Dept / Unit or ECO</td>
<td>Budget</td>
<td>Activity Status</td>
<td>RAG</td>
<td>Q3 Commentary</td>
<td>Q4 Commentary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2250</td>
<td>Avondale - develop new community centre and library</td>
<td>Develop a new integrated community centre and library in Avondale</td>
<td>Options to be approved by local board</td>
<td>CF: Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$100,000 ABS: Capex - Development</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status. Community engagement is underway with 26 April. Meetings have been held with a number of groups in the community. The online survey is live and planning is advanced for a number of face-to-face activities. Next steps: Face-to-face activities and meetings with stakeholders will continue through April. A professional services firm will be engaged and commence writing the design brief.</td>
<td>Current status. Design brief is underway with community, internal stakeholders and mana whenua input and is due to be completed by 2 July 2019. Next steps: Complete design brief and workshop with the local board in quarter one.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2251</td>
<td>Crown Lynn Park development</td>
<td>Development of local park. This project is a continuation of the 2017/2018 programme (previous SP18 ID 2248).</td>
<td>Design to be agreed with local board</td>
<td>CF: Project Delivery</td>
<td>$50,000 ABS: Capex - Development</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status. Awaiting road layout plans from the Crown Lynn developer to enable the park to match the flow of the new surrounding streets. Also the land swap needs to be finalised to confirm the park boundary before design can commence. Next steps: Commence concept design once the two issues mentioned above have been finalised.</td>
<td>Current status. The project has not moved forward as we are still awaiting road layout plans from the Crown Lynn developer to enable the park to match the flow of the new surrounding streets. A land swap also needs to be finalised to confirm the park boundary before design can commence. Next steps: Once the two issues mentioned above have been finalised we can commence the concept design.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2252</td>
<td>Holly St to Heron Park - install walkway</td>
<td>Design and construct boardwalk connecting Holly Street to Heron Park through the Motu Manawa Marine Reserve. The proposed formation consists of a concrete path constructed within esplanade reserve and timber boardwalk constructed in the Coastal Marine Area (CMA).</td>
<td>Options to be approved by local board</td>
<td>CF: Project Delivery</td>
<td>$320,000 ABS: Capex - Development</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed December 2018.</td>
<td>Project completed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2253</td>
<td>ILO Whau Recreation Centre – develop new recreation centre</td>
<td>Develop a recreation centre in the Whau area. This project is a continuation of the 2017/2018 programme (previous SP18 ID 2232).</td>
<td>Options to be approved by local board</td>
<td>CF: Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$350,000 ABS: Capex - Development</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status. The Indicative Business Case August 2017 (IBC) provided options for both the aquatic/recreation and community centre. Based on recommendations in the IBC, Panuku have been progressing land sourcing, monitoring and acquisition. The ILO Local Initiative (ILI) component of the initial project brief is the development of an aquatic/recreation centre. The development of a Benefits Realisation Plan (BRP) is underway in preparation for the Detailed Business Case. It is anticipated that this work will be completed in early 2019. Next steps: Ongoing land sourcing, monitoring and acquisition by Panuku for the aquatic / recreation centre. Development of a draft detailed business case for local board feedback. The draft DBC will include benefits realisation, commercial case, financial case and a management case.</td>
<td>Current status. The Benefits Realisation Plan is being approved. Once completed this project will be transferred to Service, Strategy and Integration to lead development of a Detailed Business Case and land monitoring and acquisition if an appropriate site is identified. Next steps: Ongoing land sourcing, monitoring and acquisition by Panuku for the aquatic / recreation centre. Development of a draft detailed business case for local board feedback. The draft DBC will include benefits realisation, commercial case, financial case and a management case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2254</td>
<td>Crown Park - implement park development plan (Stage 1)</td>
<td>Commence implementation of development plan including design and construction of new park, and potentially prioritise one physical works</td>
<td>Options to be approved by local board</td>
<td>CF: Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$150,000 LDI: Capex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status. Ground testing at the works depot site indicated the existence of asbestos in the soil, this will lead to additional significant costs. The local board has reaffirmed this in the form of a memo. Next steps: Dismiss options with the local board at the Community Facilities workshop on the 3 April 2019.</td>
<td>Current status. Eastern footpath link design and construction plantings are being developed. Next steps: Physical works.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2255</td>
<td>Motu Manawa, Holly St to Eastside Road - install walkway</td>
<td>Design and construct boardwalk connecting Holly Street to Eastside Road through the Motu Manawa Marine Reserve. The proposed formation consists of a concrete path constructed within esplanade reserve and timber boardwalk constructed in the Coastal Marine Area (CMA).</td>
<td>Options to be approved by local board</td>
<td>CF: Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$150,000 LDI: Capex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>Current status. Engaged Frame Group Consultants to finalise the scope and fees proposals, and prepare tender documentations. This will need to go through the local board for formal approvals. Next steps: Planning and tendering phases.</td>
<td>The project may be delayed due to funding issues, to financial year 2021. Current status. Engagement of consultants completed to commence design of the next stage of the walkway. Next steps: Discuss concept design with the local board.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Activity Name</td>
<td>Activity Description</td>
<td>Further Decision Required</td>
<td>Lead Dept / Unit or GO</td>
<td>Budget</td>
<td>Activity Status</td>
<td>RAG</td>
<td>Q4 Commentary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2257</td>
<td>New Lynn Transit LRTway - Stage 2</td>
<td>Progress physical works</td>
<td>Options to be approved by local board</td>
<td>CF- Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$100,000 LDI Capex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>Current status: The underground services in McCrae Lane have recently been confirmed to be private assets which are not maintained by Auckland Council. Any physical works completed in the lane must be undertaken on Auckland Council assets and infrastructure. Only investigation is underway to determine if the new ground plane art can be installed without impacting private underground services. Next steps: Continue to work with the artists and other stakeholders to investigate if an alternative ground plane art work is able to be installed. The flexible scope of the lane way renewal remains ambiguous due to the presence of private asset in the lane way. Current status: It has been established that McCrae Lane is not an Auckland Council asset. An assurance needs to be sought as to the extent of any renewal work that can be completed by Auckland Council, and the permission of private asset owners is required to enable any renewal work to be completed. Without consent to work in the lane, the project is unable to progress. Next steps: Communicate with all stakeholders and ensure all parties understand the ownership structure of the lane, and how the operation impacts Auckland Council’s available renewal options. Continue to pursue private asset owner permission to complete, at least, a concrete resurfacing renewal.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2258</td>
<td>Whau - install drinking fountains</td>
<td>Install drinking fountains for the second phase of sites as identified</td>
<td>Options to be approved by local board</td>
<td>CF- Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$50,000 LDI Capex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Closed landfill approval received for remaining site. Installation underway. Next steps: Project handover and close out. Project completed May 2019.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2259</td>
<td>Whau - LDI Miner CAPEX Fund 2018/19</td>
<td>Funding to deliver miner CAPEX projects throughout the financial year as approved in the monthly local board workshops.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF- Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$50,000 LDI Capex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Proposed works to be identified. Next steps: Proposed works to be workshops with the local board.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2779</td>
<td>Tony Sagedin Esplanade Reserve renewal</td>
<td>Tony Sagedin Esplanade Reserve handrail renewal. This project is a continuation of the 2017/2018 programme (previous SP18 ID 2768).</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF- Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$50,700 AER Capex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2780</td>
<td>Barron Green Domain - stage 2 design a</td>
<td>Progress the design and consent stage</td>
<td>Progress the design and consent stage</td>
<td>CF- Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$25,000 LDI Capex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: A meeting with all stakeholders is planned to discuss park location and planning. Next steps: Design scope.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2781</td>
<td>Birkenhead Park stage two design and a</td>
<td>Progress the design and consent stage</td>
<td>Progress the design and consent stage</td>
<td>CF- Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$30,000 LDI Capex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Following work programme discussions, the installation of basketball hoops has been identified as a priority. Next steps: Progress this aspect of works.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2782</td>
<td>Green Bay - develop community corner</td>
<td>Completion of the design phase and progress physical works</td>
<td>Completion of the design phase and progress physical works</td>
<td>CF- Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$50,000 LDI Capex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Design work complete. Awarding the design contract. Next steps: Commence physical works in May.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2784</td>
<td>Green Bay Domain - stage 3 design and a</td>
<td>Progress the design and consent stage</td>
<td>Progress the design and consent stage</td>
<td>CF- Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$25,000 LDI Capex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Following work programme discussions, officers advise reallocation of remaining funding to the Birkenhead Park project to allow delivery of improved basketball court facilities. Next steps: Confirm this proposed change with the local board.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2785</td>
<td>Rawaekawa pathway - design phase</td>
<td>Undertake site investigations required to develop the McLauglin Way area to a developed design stage with costs estimates.</td>
<td>Undertake site investigations required to develop the McLauglin Way area to a developed design stage with costs estimates.</td>
<td>CF- Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$40,000 LDI Capex</td>
<td>Cancelled</td>
<td>Gray</td>
<td>Current status: Memo sent to the local board advising reallocation of funding to Auckland Transport to complete works along McLauglin Way. Next steps: Recommend this project is closed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2786</td>
<td>Archibald Park - develop playground and fitness area</td>
<td>Undertake the detailed design phase, obtain the necessary consents and progress physical works, as per the Archibald Park concept plan. To develop the playground and fitness area.</td>
<td>CF- Project Delivery</td>
<td>$200,000 LDI Capex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: The resource consent application has been lodged to council should receive a decision mid-late April 2019. The designers are working on the last few details for the tender drawings. Next steps: Receive tender documents and engage physical works contractor.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Points</th>
<th>Lead Dept / Unit or COO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2843</td>
<td>Whau - rivervale town centre</td>
<td>Revitalisation of town centre in Whau local board. The funds were seen to be supporting a) Work with Panuku Development Auckland's work. At a Planning committee October 17 the GI confirmed Avondale as an Unlock location and adopted a High Level Project Plan. There are numerous options for interventions that are not part of the core PDA work. b) New Lynn development in particular in the Memorial Drive Area, Tiara Ave demolition by PDA in February, the Crown Lynn development and the Memorial connection to Crown Lynn site c) operational support for activation initiatives in Green Bay Project carried forward from 2017/2018.</td>
<td>Further decisions will be required in future</td>
<td>CF: Project Delivery</td>
<td>$30,600</td>
<td>LDI: Open</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status. A report is to go to the local board business meeting to re-allocate the existing budget.</td>
<td>Current status. A report is to go to the local board business meeting to re-allocate the existing budget. Project is collaborated to other projects in the work programme.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2954</td>
<td>Whau - renew furniture FY17</td>
<td>Renew furniture FY17. This project is carried over from the 2016/2017 programme (previous ID 3025).</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Project Delivery</td>
<td>$32,511</td>
<td>ABS: Capex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2965</td>
<td>Avondale Library - replace asphalt, renew car park and replace HVAC - stage 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Project Delivery</td>
<td>$500</td>
<td>ABS: Capex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3022</td>
<td>Epsom Reserve - Upgrade - Groundman Shed &amp; Dustbins</td>
<td>Refer to PIF. This project was carried over from FY2017/2018, previous SP ID 3390.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Project Delivery</td>
<td>$96,645</td>
<td>ABS: Capex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3058</td>
<td>Blockhouse Bay Community Centre - renew car park</td>
<td>Renew car park surface and marimere parking</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Project Delivery</td>
<td>$75,600</td>
<td>ABS: Capex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status. Application for relocation works underway with Watercare. Next steps: Works to be rescheduled. Further: Further revised on timing of tender relocation with Watercare. Potential for works to be rescheduled to financial year 2020 as there is budget allocation within the draft work programme for next financial year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3069</td>
<td>Avondale Library - renew furniture, fittings and equipment</td>
<td>Renew furniture, fittings and equipment</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Project Delivery</td>
<td>$45,468</td>
<td>ABS: Capex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3092</td>
<td>Koboton Community House - refurbish children's room</td>
<td>Refurbish walls, insulate, provide heating, and replace window glazing in the children's room</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Project Delivery</td>
<td>$17,480</td>
<td>ABS: Capex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3131</td>
<td>Whau - renew park furniture 2017/18</td>
<td>Renew park furniture in Akarava Park, Avondale West Reserve, Craigowan Park, Craighaven Park, Delta Triangle, Fortneys Reserve, Green Bay Beach, Manukau Wetland Reserve, Parks Reserve, Sherwood Reserve, Ray's Reserve, Taunton Terrace, Blockhouse Bay Seach Reserve, and Terniku Gardens. This project was carried forward from FY17/18, previous SP ID 2554.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Project Delivery</td>
<td>$16,187</td>
<td>ABS: Capex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Points</th>
<th>Lead Dept / Unit / COO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3132</td>
<td>Whau - renew park signage, 2017-18</td>
<td>Renew park signage in Arondale West Reserve, Bob Hill Reserve, Cape Bay Park, Craggines Park, Dallas Reserve, Delta Triangle, Golf Road Domain, Golf Road Domain, Green Bay Reserve, Green Bay Domain, Hinau Reserve, Mavisel Park, Miranda Reserve, Northall Park, Petits Reserve, Riversdale Reserve, Ruia Reserve, and Taunton Terrace. This project was carried over from FY17/18, previous SharePoint ID: 2256</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Project Delivery</td>
<td>$13,741 ABS Capex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed January 2019</td>
<td>Project completed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3158</td>
<td>Bicentennial Bay Community Centre - refurbish entranceway</td>
<td>This project was carried over from FY2017/2018, previous SP ID 3431</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Project Delivery</td>
<td>$14,520 LDL Capex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed</td>
<td>Project completed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3159</td>
<td>Barron (Green) - install power supply to light the trees by Green Bay Community House</td>
<td>Installation of power supply to light the three trees by the Green Bay Community House on Barron Green. This project was carried over from FY2017/2018, previous SP ID 3432</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Project Delivery</td>
<td>$13,448 LDL Capex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed</td>
<td>Project completed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3162</td>
<td>Avondale Racecourse - renew underground toilet block</td>
<td>This is a failed asset which has been closed for health and safety reasons. Currently there are portable facilities on site. This project has been fast tracked as critical work. This project was carried over from FY2017/2018, previous SP ID 3434</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Project Delivery</td>
<td>$33,534 ABS Capex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Project on hold pending strategic direction. Next steps: Physical works to be tendered on approval for works to proceed.</td>
<td>Current status: Project taken off hold. Quoting to commence in new financial year. Next steps: Alignment of quote for physical works to budget. Physical works to be programmed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3166</td>
<td>Whau - minor asset quick response fund</td>
<td>Minor asset quick response fund. This project was carried over from FY2017/2018, previous SP ID 3453</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Project Delivery</td>
<td>$90,520 LDL Capex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Signage locations are being confirmed for installation and orientation. Next steps: Engage consultant for design.</td>
<td>Current status: Final proofs are complete. Signs are in production. Next steps: Installation and final review of signage. Project completed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3205</td>
<td>Te Whau - Pathway - Archibald Park - renew pontoon and boat ramp</td>
<td>This project is a continuation of the 2017/2018 programme (previous SP ID 2248).</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Project Delivery</td>
<td>$0 External funding</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed</td>
<td>Project completed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3206</td>
<td>Te Whau Pathway Stage 1B - Rial Reserve - renew path and develop path connector</td>
<td>Renew Rial Reserve pathway and develop the Te Whau Pathway path connector. This project is a continuation of the 2017/2018 programme (previous SP ID 2248).</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Project Delivery</td>
<td>$270,000 LDL Capex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Further correspondence with Watercare on alternative design option has been considered. Obtained approval from Watercare. The consultant is currently working on detailed design of this critical footpath section. Next steps: Progress with the detailed design of the proposed footpath along Rial Reserve.</td>
<td>Current status: Additional geotechnical work including slope stability analysis completed and detailed design underway. Obtained feasibility report on option analysis for alignment of Rial Reserve section and requested additional information after internal review. Next steps: Obtain additional information from the consultant. Confirm preferred alignment and complete detailed design.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3207</td>
<td>Te Whau Pathway Stage 2A - Ken Muirder to Rial Reserve - develop path connector</td>
<td>Develop the Te Whau Pathway connector pathway from Ken Muirder to Rial Reserve. This project is a continuation of the 2017/2018 programme (previous SP ID 2248).</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$171,639 LDL Capex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Work programme obtained from consultant that outlined timeframes and sequence of works. First stages of design work for sections B and F and handrail are underway. Next steps: Progress detailed design work and non-notified resource consent application for concrete footpath section since obtained.</td>
<td>Current status: Obtained feasibility report on option analysis for alignment of Rial Reserve section and requested additional information after internal review. Next steps: Obtain additional information from the consultant. Confirm preferred alignment and commence detailed design.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3265</td>
<td>Manukau Coastal Walkway - upgrade signage and interpretive signage</td>
<td>Install wayfinding signage on Manukau Coastal Walkway. Design work has been completed.</td>
<td>No further decision points anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Project Delivery</td>
<td>$33,560 External funding</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Signage locations are being finalized for confirmation of installation method and orientation. Next steps: Approve designs and install signs.</td>
<td>Current status: Signage proofs are under review. Next steps: Finalise the design and install signs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Options</th>
<th>Lead Dept / Unit or COO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3266</td>
<td>Archibald Park - design and construction of waka ama storage shed</td>
<td>Design and paint a mural and apply graffiti guard to Tikitangi and changing room.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Project Delivery</td>
<td>$150,000</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status</td>
<td>Stakeholders and design consultants met and finalised the final design. Next steps: Commence design work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3267</td>
<td>Archibald Park - design and install mural on amenity block</td>
<td>Design and paint a mural and apply graffiti guard to Tikitangi and changing room.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Project Delivery</td>
<td>$150,000</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status</td>
<td>Community engagement and conceptual design of the mural is underway. Next steps: Review scope items and pricing to reduce budget. Project completed June 2019.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3268</td>
<td>Riverside Reserve - supply and installation boom gate at car park entrance</td>
<td>Design and paint a mural and apply graffiti guard to Tikitangi and changing room.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Project Delivery</td>
<td>$7,000</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status</td>
<td>Works completed in March 2019. Next steps: Project handover and closure. Project completed March 2019.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3270</td>
<td>Sandy Lane Reserve - complete detailed design and construct</td>
<td>Development of Sandy Lane Reserve.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Project Delivery</td>
<td>$165,000</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status</td>
<td>Works to be included as part of Rūākawa Reserve development. Next steps: Continue to develop as part of Rūākawa Reserve development. Current status: Detail design plans reviewed and is currently being finalised. Next steps: Finalise detailed design plans, lodge building and resource consent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3286</td>
<td>Tamaki River - Snlatex Boat Park - upgrade walkway</td>
<td>Upgrade sections of walkway including boatstealing, sick rail and handrail</td>
<td></td>
<td>CF: Project Delivery</td>
<td>$70,000</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed</td>
<td>Project completed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Community Services: Service Strategy and Integration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Options</th>
<th>Lead Dept / Unit or COO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1411</td>
<td>Friends of Te Awanui - replacement of Avondale Community Centre to address condition issues</td>
<td>Investigate the need for library expansion</td>
<td></td>
<td>CS: Service Strategy and Integration</td>
<td>$100,000</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Community engagement is underway until 26 April. Meetings have been held with a number of community groups. Next steps: Continue to engage with community groups.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Infrastructure and Environmental Services

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Options</th>
<th>Lead Dept / Unit or COO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>613</td>
<td>Friends of Oakley Creek Reserve - Restoration Project</td>
<td>Community engagement and activation to inform concept design scope for fitout and operation</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>WEBS: Healthy Waters</td>
<td>$3,000</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Animal and plant pest control was the focus of this quarter. The contractor continues to liaise with ENS: Healthy Waters. Plant propagation continues with more than 250 plants distributed in Whau. The contractor continues to liaise with Auckland Council and other contractors regarding weed problems in some of the newer plantings in Oakley Creek.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Activity Name</td>
<td>Activity Description</td>
<td>Further Decision Required</td>
<td>Lead Dept / Unit or GCO</td>
<td>Budget</td>
<td>Activity Status</td>
<td>RAG</td>
<td>Q3 Commentary</td>
<td>Q4 Commentary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>619</td>
<td>Household and Communities Engagement</td>
<td>To enable ethnic communities through supporting their interests and energy to benefit the environment and to provide positive outcomes for their communities. This will be achieved via the EcoMatters Love Your Neighbourhood initiative, which will provide rapid response assistance up to a value of $600 per project to support the Whau’s diverse communities to undertakе volunteer-driven practical environmental initiatives such as environmental clean ups and restoration, community planting initiatives and food growing, and associated translation services. The EcoMatters Love Your Neighbourhood initiative can also respond to requests from the Whau Local Board to support the environmental action of ethnic communities.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>MES: Environmental Services</td>
<td>$5,000</td>
<td>LDI: Oper.</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Three applications were approved in quarter three, totaling $300. This included supporting a group of China Cove Elders, incorporated as the Auckland Environmental Protection Association, to participate and implement an action plan for disestablishing the new Lynn Friendship Garden (community garden) and also supporting another local group in a clean up the Seabullie Road stream to remove rubbish and dumped furniture. In quarter four there will future promotions of the opportunity to collaborate with community groups.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>620</td>
<td>Ecomatters Sustainability Hub Activation (Whau)</td>
<td>This budget will allow further improvements to the Ecomatters precinct at Olympic Park in response to the 2016 review, in relation to the quality of the information and user experience for visitors to the centre. This budget will also ensure that the nursery for native and edible plants, community organic garden, and urban organic food production systems are developed and maintained. New education programmes are developed. The continuing development of the community nursery and associated outreach service will also be supported, which can assist with building the capacity of Māori organisations involved in developing and implementing plant propagation initiatives to support environmental restoration. EcoMatters regularly host traditional Māori weaving workshops as part of their workshop education programme. EcoMatters provides support to build the capacity of other organisations involved in developing and delivering environmental initiatives. This includes supporting Māori organisations such as providing environmental education support for Te Pua Theatre Group’s community hui and holiday programme.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>MES: Environmental Services</td>
<td>$20,000</td>
<td>LDI: Oper.</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>In quarter three, EcoMatters maintained the increased staff resourcing assigned to the community nursery initiative to enable increased education related delivery without compromising the level of plant propagation activity. Three initiatives provided further support for nursery activity in quarter three. Education activity has included more Department of Corrections engagements, enabling connection to community and Papatuanuku through learning about native plant species. In quarter three approximately 200 people participated in education activities in the nursery at the EcoMatters site, which equates to about 350 hours of education time. Approximately 3,000 plants were germinated and potted, and over 4,500 will be available for planting during the 2019 planting season</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>621</td>
<td>Home energy advice in the Whau</td>
<td>The project has two objectives. To reduce residential energy use and associated carbon emissions and also improve resident health by keeping houses warmer and drier. Insulation, ventilation and efficient heating are critical to improved health outcomes in poor quality homes in Auckland. Efforts to improve insulation, ventilation and heating along with the use of more efficient appliances are key to making homes warmer, while lowering domestic energy use. The project involves doorstep provision of home energy advice and energy saving devices to residents, including new migrants, in high priority locations within the board area. The project includes a follow up survey of participants to evaluate effectiveness of action taken as a result of the provision of advice, information, and targeted energy efficiency devices for use in the home.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>MES: Environmental Services</td>
<td>$20,000</td>
<td>LDI: Oper.</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>For this project 170 households were engaged in Whau, totalling 596 residents. Of those 137 completed the four-week follow up survey with 108 taking a total of 261 actions, averaging 2.6 actions per household, and 145 actions were still planned to be taken. The most popular actions were talking about household energy efficiency, turning off appliances, reducing shower timers and upgrading curtains. The carbon and financial savings will be provided in the full report to the board in quarter four. The final report will show the estimated carbon dioxide emissions savings resulting from the project and will be available in September 2019. As stated in the quarter three update 170 households were engaged, totalling 596 residents. Of those 137 completed the four-week follow up survey with 108 taking a total of 261 actions, averaging 2.6 actions per household, and 145 actions were still planned to be taken. Although there were no issues in project delivery, combined data across four quarters has delayed the delivery of the report. Workshops are planned to present the findings to the board in quarter three of the 2019/20 financial year.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Points</th>
<th>Lead Dept / Unit or GO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>022</td>
<td>Whau Low Carbon Network</td>
<td>To establish a low carbon network for the Whau Local Board area. This is a network of individuals, households, community groups, and businesses working together within the local board area to promote, support and implement community-level low carbon activities. This community-led network will support implementation of the local board’s low carbon action plan (still to be finalised), in collaboration with the local board and the council’s staff. The interests of participants will determine the direction of the network and priority areas they would like to focus on. This could include elements such as - promoting low carbon-related activities in the local board area to their networks via online channels; hosting low carbon events, such as poster lectures and workshops; hosting events on low carbon initiatives; implementing carbon reduction actions in accordance with the action plan.During establishment the network will be supported by a facilitator, who will coordinate regular meetings, lead planning sessions and provide support for activities. Over time it is hoped that the network will become self-sustaining, with the majority of activities being volunteer-led and budget being primarily used to deliver low carbon activities.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>MEX Environmental Services</td>
<td>$8,000</td>
<td>LOI: Open</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Ocean</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 023 | Bike Hub (Whau)              | Funding for the 2016/2019 financial year will allow for the following:  
- continue to develop and operate the repair centre for second-hand bikes at the EcoMatters precinct  
- continue to develop and deliver bicycle skills programmes in conjunction with partner organisations  
- develop a bike hire service that educates users about active transport and the Whau River environment | No further decisions anticipated | MEX Environmental Services | $10,000 | LOI: Open       | Completed | Ocean | The New Lynn Bike Hub continues to grow and engage the community. Some days saw in excess of 40 visitors during the four hour opening session. There is a committed group of volunteers who regularly help to support the work at the site. In quarter three there were approximately 830 visitors, 300 bikes fixed and 300 hours of volunteer support. There were also regular donations of used bikes, with issues around managing the space to store these securely. In quarter four there will be continuation of support and engagement for bikers. |

Auckland Council's Year End and Quarterly Performance Report: Whau Local Board for quarter four 2018/2019
### Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Points</th>
<th>Lead Dept / Unit or CCO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>625</td>
<td>EcoWest Festival (Keiwhakatu)</td>
<td>Funding to support the running of EcoWest Festival in March and April 2019. EcoMatters deliverables include: • Provide a community-based environmental festival with access to free public events • Design and deliver an event that provides information and practical ideas for making sustainable living easier • Market the festival to businesses, institutions and community groups acknowledging the board’s funding • Promote the festival in ways that target the diversity and distribution of the population. To work collaboratively with other agencies who may be delivering similar events in the other sub-regions at the same time</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>ME: Environmental Services</td>
<td>$9,000</td>
<td>LOD: Open</td>
<td>Orange</td>
<td>A request for expressions of interest for event organisers to register for EcoWest was issued in November 2018, with a deadline of 29 January 2019. A total of 127 events were submitted, with 51 events in Whau, 36 in Henderson-Messley and 30 in the Waiuku Ranges. An additional two events were scheduled across multiple local board areas, and these events in neighbouring local board areas due to lower proximity and accessibility to communities in the three western local board areas. February and March 2019 focused on promotion of the festival through websites, as well as targeting relevant media channels with press releases throughout West Auckland. Cycle-powered Cinema, a major festival event originally scheduled for the opening day of the festival on 10 March 2019 was postponed until 6 April 2019 due to the significant incident in Christchurch. The EcoWest Festival will run through to 14 April 2019.</td>
<td>EcoWest Festival 2019 took place from 16 March to 14 April 2019. The festival comprised 123 events hosted by 44 different organisations, groups and individuals. Events took place across the three western local boards, with 55 events in Whau, 30 events in Waiuku Ranges and 34 events in Henderson-Messley. Almost all events were free or low cost and more than half of the events actively involved children of all ages in activities. A number of new groups and organisations hosted events, including the Original Art Association, Everybody Cuts, Unitec, the ReCreators_Wildnests, the University of Auckland – Faculty of Creative Arts, Te Uru Wāwhāriki Contemporary Gallery, ArtSpark and Corbin Estate Arts Centre. Continued involvement of groups and organisations that participated in previous years included Woodside Community Garden, McLean Park and Henderson South Community Trust, Forest and Bird Waiakohe, Whau The People, The Creative South Project and Ark in the Park. A new opening event attracted a diverse audience and the feedback has been positive. The new event category ‘Arts on Climate Change’ was introduced, featuring events showing our greatest environmental threat through the eyes of artists, filmmakers and other creatives.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 626 | EcoMatters Environment Centre and Sustainability Hub (EcoHub) | The funding for this project will support the operation of EcoMatters Environment Centre and associated education programmes, as well as provide baseline funding for EcoMatters Trust. EcoMatters deliverables include: • Managing the EcoMatters Environment Centre (EcoHub) • Promoting service to the diversity of Whau communities • Providing free or affordable meeting space to other environmentally focused community groups • Delivering a minimum of 26 sustainability-related seminars or workshops within the funding period | No further decisions anticipated | ME: Environmental Services | $41,000 | LOD: Open | Orange | In quarter three the EcoMatters environment centre (EcoHub) was open to the public in line with its operating target of 30 hours per week. The new EcoHub operating hours now include Saturdays and Sundays, 10am to 7pm, providing enhanced access for the community. Workshop topics included organic gardening, bug hotel making, beekeeping foodstuff making, and healthy soil workshops in both Maori and English. These events were promoted via social media, direct email and the Western Leader newspaper. Other hosted events included a hui on emerging contaminants, several community groups contributing to the Whau Wildlink initiative, and community groups dedicated to improving Olympic Park. | In quarter four, EcoMatters environment centre (EcoHub) was open to the public in line with its operating target of 30 hours per week. This included Saturdays and Sundays from 10am to 7pm, providing enhanced access for the community. In addition to ten regular organic gardening workshops, six workshops were held in quarter one, including natural workshops on permaculture, insects, teas and wellness, sustainable land management, native wahi, rongoa Maori, wakakura weaving and do-it-yourself skincare. Events hosted included two hui on emerging contaminants, several community groups contributing to the NorthWest Wildlink, and community groups dedicated to improving Olympic Park. Galvanising related activities included regular free public education workshops held on Fridays. Old compost bins were replaced with NZ Box rot-proof compost bins from Compost Collective with potential for community food waste collectors. Old garden beds were rebuilt for perennial food production. EcoMatters is currently revisiting the plan for the garden and will explore moving the emphasis from an allotment-style community space, more towards a teaching garden. Further work will be focussed on developing the garden beds and improving teaching resources. |
## Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Points</th>
<th>Lead Dept / Unit or COG</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>627</td>
<td>Love Your Neighbourhood (EcoMatters)</td>
<td>This budget will be used to: • provide rapid response assistance up to a value of $500 to support volunteer-driven practical environmental initiatives e.g. environmental clean ups and restoration, community planting and food growing initiatives providing practical assistance to not-for-profit preschools to enable environmental education initiatives; • promote availability assistance through appropriate networks across the Whau Local Board area to respond to requests from the Whau Local Board to support community action.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>MES: Environmental Services</td>
<td>$15,000</td>
<td>LDI: Opra</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Ocean</td>
<td>To date eight funding applications have been approved, with $3,900 allocated and $11,000 remaining. Funded projects currently include school rat trap building, developing school community gardens, and hiring a weedbin for the community weeding bee. One new application was approved in quarter three. The programme is still on track with focus for quarter four to be placed on communication to garner further interest in the programme across the community. New applications for the programme are expected to increase as quarter four heads into the planting season and the community may seek support for new initiatives.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 628 | Homewise (EcoMatters) | A minimum of six workshops to be provided to communities on topics such as: • waste minimisation (how to sort your household rubbish, including home composting, options and demonstration) • water saving (how to reduce your water consumption and bills) • energy efficiency (use your power bill) • sustainable living. | No further decisions anticipated | MES: Environmental Services | $10,000 | LDI: Opra | In progress | Ocean | In quarter three the programme workshop titles were changed to “Healthy homes on a budget” and in quarter four was held in Whau with Green Bay Community House Playgroup. Workshop topics included budgeting for energy and water efficiency, planning for budgeting, and waste management. The workshops were well-attended with 115 participants. Feedback was provided by workshop participants. One further workshop was held in quarter four. |

In 2019/2020, 23 applications were approved in the Whau Local Board area, with $12,000 requested and the remaining $2,000 to be allocated. Love Your Neighbourhood is an initiative continued for a three-year period as part of the three-year funding agreement established with EcoMatters Environment Trust covering the years 2017/2018 through to the end of 2019/2020. The $2,050 for Love Your Neighbourhood funds not applied by the community in 2018/2019 will continue to be available until completion of the funding period for the EcoMatters initiative at the end of June 2020. The three-year funding agreement contains provisions for the return of any unused funding at the end of the funding agreement. A model for schools and kindergartens and one-to-one engagement with community groups were successful in generating applications. One successful applicant, Glenwood Early Childhood Centre, has raised a new vegetable garden for the benefit of the children and their families. Construction of the garden was led by local volunteers and supported by Glenwood Early Childhood Centre teachers, parents, and the children themselves. Further funded projects have included a school rat trap building project, development of a community garden, and hiring a weedbin for community weeding bee.
## Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Points</th>
<th>Lead Dept / Unit or OGO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>629</td>
<td>Healthy Rentals (Whau)</td>
<td>The Healthy Rentals Project aims to raise housing literacy, support tenants and landlords to create warmer, dryer rental homes, and reduce household energy use and associated carbon emissions. The project is targeted at private rental properties with housing quality issues, low income tenants, or tenants who have health conditions exacerbated by cold, damp housing. It delivers in-home advice and free installations for tenants, and a housing report and subsidies for the landlord. It is designed to align with and complement the regional Ministry of Health Auckland Wide Healthy Home Initiative (AWHH) Kainga Ora) and enable a greater number of households to benefit from the support package outlined above. Note the 2018/2019 budget figure shown for this activity includes the $25,000 originally approved plus $5,538 drawdown from 2017/2018.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>MES: Environmental Services</td>
<td>$30,538</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Quarter three has been a slow period for the healthy rentals project due to the holiday period and it being the warmest time of year when issues of cold, damp homes are not normally of concern to residents. Five homes received healthy rentals energy efficiency installations via the partnership with the Kainga Ora initiative. The majority of the project will be delivered during quarter four when the colder weather typically generates greater uptake. Healthy rentals flyers have been distributed to all libraries in the local board area and meetings have been held with the strategic broker to tap into local community networks to promote the project. Project promotion through local board channels, social media and door knocking in the community has also been undertaken during quarter three and will be continued in quarter four.</td>
<td>Quarter four has seen slower uptake than expected for the project due to the late onset of cold winter weather. In quarter four, four homes received healthy rentals energy efficiency installations via the partnership with the Kainga Ora initiative and a further three homes received assessments, advice and interventions supported weekly by the local board. Project promotion has been stepped up through local board channels, social media and door knocking. The project has a $6,000 underspend and the board has reallocated these funds to their final grants funding round. A report on the final numbers and outcomes of the 2018/19 healthy rentals project will be completed in October 2019 and delivered to the board in early 2020.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| 630| Industry Pollution Prevention Programme - Whau | This programme is primarily educational and aims to inform urban industries and businesses about the impacts their activities may be having on local waterways. The programme includes a site inspection and discussion with the business owners about potential issues arising pollution as well as waste management techniques and soil training. If changes are recommended, a report is sent to the business. The programme involves a GIS mapping exercise to ensure that commercial businesses understand the stormwater network connections in relation to local waterways. The exact area in which the project will be undertaken in the 2019/2020 financial year is yet to be determined; however, staff recommend continuing this work from the 2017/2018 financial year along Rosebank Road. | No further decisions anticipated | MES: Healthy Waters | $20,000 | Completed | Green | This project has been completed. In quarter two, 77 sites were visited and 22 sites received reports recommending changes to practice. The contractor will present the results of the project to the board at a workshop on 3 April 2019. | As indicated in the quarter three this project has been completed. At the request of the board, a memo was sent to the board in early July in place of a workshop. Seventy-seven businesses were visited in the Clandine and Rosebank Road area, as part of the 2018/2019 programme. Of these businesses, 17 were identified with issues and given advice on how to improve site practices to reduce the risk of polluting waterways. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Projects</th>
<th>Lead Dept / Unit or GCO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>631</td>
<td>Whau Environmental Assistance Programme</td>
<td>The Whau community is highly active in caring for their local environment. A framework to build greater collaboration between groups will increase the quantity and effectiveness of conservation projects and increase the engagement of the wider Whau community. Protecting Whau Restoration Network provides this framework and having a budget around which to collaboratively plan will provide a tool and catalyst. There are many projects already being led by the community, and other valuable projects that can be initiated. Funding will be used to start or grow projects and the capability of Whau community groups that run them. Funding allocation would be determined within the network, and its projects are collaboratively developed. The network will be convened by Ecocollaborators, facilitated by council staff. One project currently put forward by the community is the Whau Whare Catchment Trusts’ Knowledge Sharing Project involving seasonal biodiversity surveys of the Whau River catchment, followed by a community symposium. Surveys will engage the wider Whau community, and will collect biodiversity data (to be shared at the symposium in May 2019). This, along with other project ideas which will be tested by Whau community groups, can be further developed and collaboratively delivered through the network.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>EES Environmental Services</td>
<td>$30,000</td>
<td>LDF, Open</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>The Whau Ecology Network has continued to meet during quarter three. Nine projects have been confirmed among the groups of the network and the funding agreements are being completed for the end of March 2019. Three examples of projects arising through this programme are developing rongoa gardens to engage members of the Māori community, storytelling about the big trees in Whau and the important role they play in the health of the landscape, and Waiauaotu - a project engaging Blockhouse Bay Intermediate School students and local residents in creating a safe predator free corridor along Waiauaotu Stream from Olympic Park to Cleeve Bay. Resources, skills and community connections for all the projects will be built over the coming quarter, and will be used to develop these and new projects in the 2019/2020 financial year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>732</td>
<td>Manukau Harbour Forum - Whau</td>
<td>To implement the Manukau Harbour Forum work programme. The proposed work programme includes a governance review, communications plan, symposium, and an education project.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>EES Healthy Waters</td>
<td>$10,000</td>
<td>LDF, Open</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>In February the forum supported a community focused Manukau Harbour Forum at the Okeehungu Festival, presenting an interactive display with the Our Water Future engagement staff and resulting in at least 600 face to face interactions with the public. The staff was well attended by elected members and supported by council’s Sustainable Schools team and participants from the youth leadership programme. February also saw the distribution of the forum’s newsletter and the online publication of the forum’s video project, which was shared and promoted via social media channels. The governance and management review, which was due to begin in quarter three, will begin in April 2019. Planning is underway for a one-day symposium event to be held in June 2019. Planning for the model small site field day event was completed in March 2019 and the event will be held in Pukekohe on the 18 April 2019. The youth leadership programme wananga will take place over 15 – 17 April 2019. Invitations for forum members to participate in the wananga were sent in late March 2019.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item 22</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Points</th>
<th>Lead Dept/Unit/CEO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1205</td>
<td>Provision of Library Service - Whau</td>
<td>Deliver a library service - Help customers find what they need, when they need it, and help them navigate our services and digital offerings. Promoting information, library collection lending services and eServices as well as support for customers using library digital resources, PCs and WiFi.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CS: Libraries &amp; Information</td>
<td>$1,601,129</td>
<td>ANS: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>There has been a slight decrease in visits across the Whau libraries. Public computer access and printing continues to be popular in all Whau branches, with Iwai Lennex experiencing a 6% rise in use of the public computers. New Lenn offers Spark Jump sessions regularly with many new patrons being reached through this initiative. New Lenn Library is hosting an interactive display that promotes our digital offer and allows visitors to sample eBook and eAudio services. Whau libraries remain a valued interface for Council services in the region.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1206</td>
<td>Additional hours to network branches - Whau</td>
<td>5 additional opening hours at Avondale Library 3 additional opening hours at Blockhouse Bay Library 1 additional opening hour at New Lynn Library.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CS: Libraries &amp; Information</td>
<td>$42,500</td>
<td>LDL: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Whau libraries are well utilised from opening to close, with an increased amount of youth staying in branches till 6pm using Wi-Fi and study areas. Weekends remain busy in all libraries with added adult workshops and makerspace adding to the already strong children's offer. Sunday Family Storytime brings in 50 adults and children. Extended hours facilitate greater creativity in timing of events and community led programming such as make-space for both children and adults.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1207</td>
<td>Additional programming - Whau</td>
<td>Develop and deliver targeted programmes utilising additional resources.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CS: Libraries &amp; Information</td>
<td>$7,000</td>
<td>LDL: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Additional funds facilitated the Whau Libraries Local Health Expo Saturday event at Blockhouse Bay, a collaborative event delivered by children's teams across the area. Extra funding also contributed to the purchase of additional makerspace equipment to be used across the Whau Libraries, including sewing machines, Lego and Raspberry Pi mini computers for coding that will enable us to provide more digital programming for the community.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1208</td>
<td>Preschool programming - Whau</td>
<td>Provide programming for preschoolers that encourages early literacy, active movement, and supports parents and caregivers to participate confidently in their children's early development and learning. Programmes include: Wriggle and Rhyme, Rhythmtime, Storytime.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CS: Libraries &amp; Information</td>
<td>$30,000</td>
<td>ABS: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Preschool programmes are exceptionally well attended with Avondale Library Wriggle and Rhyme sessions reaching 771 children and caregivers. New Lenn had 765 participants and 523 attended at Blockhouse Bay. Storytime remains popular with 825 children and caregivers engaged. Avondale and New Lenn bilingual Chinese/English storytime had over 230 attendees over the quarter. Two Pridie Rhythmtimes were held at the New Lynn community centre with 150 adults and children attending.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1209</td>
<td>Children and Youth Engagement - Whau</td>
<td>Provide children and youth services and programming which encourage learning, literacy and social interaction. Engage with children, youth and whanau along with local schools to support library and grow awareness of library resources. Provide a flexibus language and literacy building summer reading programme for 5-13 year olds.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CS: Libraries &amp; Information</td>
<td>$30,000</td>
<td>ABS: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>The Kids to WhauDare to Explore summer reading programme was celebrated across the Whau with well attended events and activities including 178 at Avondale attending augmented reality, ice cream making, sweater building. Bookmark design competition had 66 entries in New Lynn and 5 winners across a wide range of ages. New Lynn scavenger hunt tied participants around New Lynn heritage sites, 60 took part and the prize was sponsored by the New Lynn Business Association. Blockhouse Bay had large numbers attending activities over January and the party attracted 216 adults and children to face painting, bounce castle and circus activities. Over 700 participants celebrated the Kids to WhauDare to Explore programme finale parties at Iwai Lennex and Avondale Libraries. Mobile bus visits reached Chaucer, Marshall Lang, Ulan Avon and Awhitu Schools reaching 893 children.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This quarter has seen increased use of PC and WiFi sessions at both Blockhouse Bay and New Lynn libraries, also larger increases in new memberships registrations, numbers participating in events and programmes. Extended hours continue to be appreciated by customers and family events and programmes are held during the weekends to attract more numbers. The electronics workshop at Blockhouse Bay ran over two weekends in June and was oversubscribed. Feedback from participants was hugely enthusiastic and more are planned. Conversations in English happen every Sunday at Avondale Library where a core group of 10 people with English as a second language practice speaking with each other. Makerspace equipment to supplement current resources was purchased and this will be used for targeted programming eg regular electronics workshops in all Whau Libraries. New purchases include Lego sets, sewing machines, badge making kits and machines, kits for electronics and robotics. An extensive Autumn series of Makerspace sessions was run throughout this last quarter.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Points</th>
<th>Lead Dept/ Unit or COO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1210</td>
<td>Support customer and community connection and create a cultural diversity and local places, people and heritage - Whau</td>
<td>Support Whau Local Board in supporting the community by promoting cultural diversity and local places, people and heritage.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CS: Libraries &amp; Information</td>
<td>$0 ABS: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>The Whau Co-Design team held their third Expo at Blockhouse Bay, Whau Family Day with an emphasis on health, development and finance. Organisations involved were Greenhouse Hub, Kari Whau, Whau Community Centres, Waitakere, Disability Connect, Finti Signs, Deaf Aotearoa, Greenpeace, Suntup and Sports Waitakere. There were over 200 interactions on the day and community connections were strengthened. Foodbanks were attended by library staff distributing withdrawn books and promoting engagement. Speak Jump is offered by New Lynn Library and attracts foodbank users. The Whau library team collaborated with the NZ Chinese Association to deliver multiple events, inviting volunteers to take part in a Lunar New Year Festival held at Olympic Park. This was a great team event with over 400 interactions. Other Lunar New Year events engaged 250 people. Our Muslim community was honoured at all libraries in the Whau with murals, tables, and other support. Papakāi Mākenespace was a collaborative event with foraliers and Whau Huihepu and a film was created by teenagers with the Squary project. Mākenespace sessions at New Lynn, which included embroidery workshops, are being extended due to high demand. A limited circle is run by volunteers in Blockhouse Bay and Chess Club is consistently popular at New Lynn with 20 attendees per session.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1211</td>
<td>Celebrating Te Ao Māori and strengthening responsiveness to Māori - Whataupu i te rei taki i Whau</td>
<td>Celebrating as Māori with events and programmes including nationally coordinated and promoted programmes: Te Tiriti o Waitangi, Māori and Māori Language Week. Engaging with iwi and Māori organisations Whataupu i te rei taki i Whau.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CS: Libraries &amp; Information</td>
<td>$0 ABS: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Staff across the Whau are continuing to strengthen Te Ao Māori. Shows were run in Avondale to promote basic Te Reo with English translations. Displays across the Whau acknowledged and promoted awareness of Te Tiriti o Waitangi. Te Reo Māori greetings are used by staff in the phone and in person. Māori collections and resources are prominently situated promoted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Whau Local Board
28 August 2019

Auckland Council’s Year End and Quarterly Performance Report: Whau Local Board for quarter four 2018/2019

Attachment A

Item 22

Whau Local Board

25/30

Whau Local Board

Page 250

Whau Local Board

Auckland Council’s Year End and Quarterly Performance Report: Whau Local Board for quarter four 2018/2019

Attachment A

Item 22

Whau Local Board

25/30

Whau Local Board

Auckland Council’s Year End and Quarterly Performance Report: Whau Local Board for quarter four 2018/2019
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Points</th>
<th>Lead Dept / Unit or COO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1212</td>
<td>Learning and literacy programming and digital literacy support - Whau</td>
<td>Provide learning programmes and events throughout the year. Support our customers to</td>
<td>No further decisions</td>
<td>CS: Libraries &amp; Information</td>
<td>$0</td>
<td>AB4: Opex</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>At Whau Libraries took part in Blind Date with a book, an Auckland Libraries initiative promoting reading in a fun way. It was very successful with over 200 books checked out. Blockhouse Bay book club continues to be popular and 95 customers used the book a librarian service to get help with a broad range of topics including social media, CV writing and job applications. Whau Libraries are the go to destination for customers needing assistance with printing and scanning. Digital storytime at New Lynn promoted libraries digital offer and helped to uplift over 30 children and parents a week. The 3D printer remains popular and is well utilised by Whau youth and adults.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>537</td>
<td>LED work programme</td>
<td>The recently refreshed LED Action Plan contains recommended work programmes for the</td>
<td>Adoption of</td>
<td>ATED: Local Economic</td>
<td>$25,000</td>
<td>On Hold</td>
<td>Red</td>
<td>There has been no response to requests to resolve any issues with the refreshed LED Action Plan. As a result discussion on implementation of specific initiatives has not taken place and is unlikely to progress in 2019/20. The refreshed LED Action Plan has not been adopted by the local board so the initiatives within it have not progressed further. The local board need to provide direction on what is it they would like to progress. There has been no response to requests to resolve any issues with the refreshed LED Action Plan. As a result discussion on implementation of specific initiatives has not taken place and as a result the projects has been deferred into the next financial year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>614</td>
<td>Whau Pop-up Business School</td>
<td>Whau has a low number of jobs per resident and the quality of jobs is lower than average. Many people commute out of the area for work. The Pop-Up Business School provides a free 10 day business school to provide education, support for local people interested in starting their own business. Examples elsewhere have had positive results in terms of the numbers of businesses established. By supporting local residents by providing entrepreneurial training the generation of local businesses will be increased and local employment opportunities provided.</td>
<td>Confirmation of any financial contribution from ATED and any neighbouring local boards. It is likely that one neighbouring local board will be fully funding its own Pop-Up Business School. This would have implications for how the Whau Local Board could support the initiative without a partnering local board.</td>
<td>ATED: Local Economic Growth</td>
<td>$7,500</td>
<td>LDI: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Pop-Up Business School contracted and will run in New Lynn from 25th April to 10th May 2019 in partnership with Henderson-Mansley and Pakuranga Local Boards and MSU. The Pop-Up Business School was held between the 29th April and the 10th May 2019. A full report of the event is still to be received and will be made available to the Local Board when available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>659</td>
<td>Young Enterprise Scheme (Whau)</td>
<td>The Auckland Chamber of Commerce, on behalf of the Young Enterprise Trust, delivers the Young Enterprise Scheme (YES) in Auckland. ATED as the economic development agency is a strategic partner supporting the delivery of YES. YES is a practical, year-long programme for year 12 and 13 students. Through the programme, students develop creative ideas into actual businesses, complete with real products and services and experience real profit and loss. The funding from the local board will support the delivery of the Young Enterprise Scheme Kick Start Days in February 2019. The Kick Start days are held in sub-regions (north, south, west, central) and are the first day students get to meet the Young Enterprise team, and find out about their 2019 year, what YES is all about, and what is in store for them.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>ATED: Local Economic Growth</td>
<td>$1,000</td>
<td>LDI: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>The Auckland Chamber of Commerce invoiced for the allocated funds from local boards and payment has been made. No further action was required as this activity was completed in the last quarter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Activity Name</td>
<td>Activity Description</td>
<td>Further Decision Points</td>
<td>Lead Dept / Unit or Group</td>
<td>Budget</td>
<td>Activity Status</td>
<td>RAG</td>
<td>Q3 Commentary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>465</td>
<td>WH Open Space Services Provision Planning</td>
<td>Undertake investigation at a parks network level to prioritise future projects and improving programmes within parks and open space in the Whau and help to define future capital and operational work programmes. Workshops and business meeting reports are scheduled for Q1/Q2</td>
<td>CS: PSR Park Services</td>
<td>$35,000</td>
<td>LDI</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Red</td>
<td>Programme re-defined at a workshop with the board in October 2018. Progress on each is outlined below. 1. Play Provision Assessment: A draft document will be shared and discussed with the board at workshop early in Q4, prior to adoption. 2. Diversity in Parks Investigation: Project completed with formal adoption of the report in Q2. Parks staff to hold discussions with ACE and Active Recreation teams to determine how recommendations from the report could be implemented in existing programmes for the 2019/2020 financial year. 3. Shaded Shelter Provision Assessment - Principles of provision workshops with the local board in Q3. Final document will be shared and discussed with the board at workshop in Q4, prior to formal adoption. 4. Olympic Park Car Park Investigation - Local board updated at a workshop in Q2. A report is being drafted to seek approval from the Auckland Transport Parking Committee for enforcement for two car parks at Olympic Park. This project is expected to be completed in Q4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>492</td>
<td>WH specific implementation plan for Auckland’s Urban Forest (Highline) Strategy</td>
<td>This project is to develop a local board specific programme which will identify, increase and protect Auckland’s Urban Forest (Highline). Information sessions were held with local boards on the Urban Forest Strategy in August 2017. This is a three-year project. Year one ‘Knowing’s phase: complete spatial mapping of the existing tree canopy cover on public and private land in the local board area. Determine the extent, type and age of urban Highline. Develop options and identify any funding required for programmes in years two and three. Year two ‘Protecting’ phase: Find space for planting new trees using partnerships, including community groups, schools and the Million Trees Program. Year three ‘Protecting’ phase: direct and indirect methods for the community to nominate and protect trees.</td>
<td>Final Highline Assessment Report will be presented for approval in Q1</td>
<td>CS: PSR Park Services</td>
<td>$5,000</td>
<td>LDI</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Amber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>569</td>
<td>Whau: Ecological volunteering and environmental programme FY19</td>
<td>Programme of activity supporting volunteer groups to carry out ecological restoration and environmental programmes in local parks, including: • Community planting events; • Beetles and arthropod surveys; • Line removal; • Biodiversity Support; • Tools and Equipment; • Beach Clean Up; •的价值</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CS: PSR Park Services</td>
<td>$30,637</td>
<td>LDI</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>598</td>
<td>Whau Māori naming of reserves and facilities Phase Two</td>
<td>Identifying opportunities for park and facility naming/renaming and ensuring access to Māori Whenua to develop Māori names and promote Auckland’s Māori identity and Māori heritage</td>
<td>Approval of names for parks in Trustee 1 by the end of 2019</td>
<td>CS: PSR Active Recreation</td>
<td>$10,000</td>
<td>LDI</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Activity Name</td>
<td>Activity Description</td>
<td>Further Decision Point</td>
<td>Lead Dept / Unit / COO</td>
<td>Budget</td>
<td>Activity Status</td>
<td>RAG</td>
<td>Q3 Commentary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1251</td>
<td>WH Deliver recreation programmes</td>
<td>Delivering a wide range of sport and recreation participation initiatives, designed to get more residents active in the Whau area.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CS: PSR/Active Recreation</td>
<td>$40,000</td>
<td>LOI: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1447</td>
<td>Avoiddale Intermediate Pool Facility Partnership</td>
<td>Provide a facility partnership grant to Avoiddale Intermediate towards enclosing and heating the school's existing outdoor swimming pool.</td>
<td>This is for reporting and information only as the grant was approved in FY18</td>
<td>CS: PSR/Active Recreation</td>
<td>$0</td>
<td>AIS: Opex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1448</td>
<td>Avoiddale College Courts Facility Partnership</td>
<td>Provide a facility partnership grant to Avoiddale College for resurfacing and floodlighting of the netball and tennis courts</td>
<td>Local board will be updated in a Q1 workshop</td>
<td>CS: PSR/Active Recreation</td>
<td>$3</td>
<td>AIS: Opex</td>
<td>On Hold</td>
<td>Red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1449</td>
<td>Avoiddale College Community Access Grant</td>
<td>Provide a community access grant to Avoiddale College to enable community use of the Avoiddale College Stadium and support maintenance of the facility.</td>
<td>Funding allocation to be determined by the Governing Body. The local board will be responsible for setting Key Performance Indicators in July and monitoring quarterly</td>
<td>CS: PSR/Active Recreation</td>
<td>$0</td>
<td>AIS: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1450</td>
<td>Whau River Catchment Park community partnership</td>
<td>Whau River Catchment Trust programme funding</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CS: PSR/Park Services</td>
<td>$35,000</td>
<td>LOI: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Activity Name</td>
<td>Activity Description</td>
<td>Further Decision Points</td>
<td>Lead Dept / Unit or COG</td>
<td>Budget</td>
<td>Activity Status</td>
<td>RAG</td>
<td>Q3 Commentary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2440</td>
<td>Te Whau Pathway work programme FY19</td>
<td>The vision for Te Whau Pathway is to be a safe and efficient off road pathway for the city, giving people access to the Whau river and connecting people and communities along the river. Operational costs including restoration work, community liaison, interpretation and user needs analysis (counters etc.)</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CS: PSR: Park Services</td>
<td>$20,000.00</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Activity for the quarter included: 1. Ongoing support for Te Whau Coastal Walkway Environmental Trust (Trust) to undertake stakeholder relationship management. 2. Updating and promoting the project through consultation with the community, local school principals, Auckland Transport (AT) and council governance. 3. Ongoing support for the Trust in the Resource Consent application process. 4. Support for Chasing of Project Steering Group monthly meetings (one of the decision making forums for the project). Attendees include project partners, community, iwi and AT. 5. Contribution to planning for the coming planting season. 6. Development of an environmental plan for the wider Whau River Catchment. 7. Ongoing management of the Te Whau Pathway Plan website and promotion of the project. 8. Continued monitoring. 9. Continued monitoring of the Te Whau Pathway Plan website and promotion of the project.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Lead Dept/Unit or COO</th>
<th>CL - Lease Commencement Date</th>
<th>CL - Right of Renewal Date</th>
<th>CL - Annual Rent Amount (excluding GST)</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1291</td>
<td>99 Rosebank Road, Avondale. Lease to Auckland Citizens Advice Bureau Incorporated (Avondale)</td>
<td>Renew building lease for three years from 1 July 2018 to existing group</td>
<td>CF: Community Leases</td>
<td>1/07/2016</td>
<td>2 x 3 years</td>
<td>$1,000</td>
<td>Deferred</td>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>The draft lease has been returned from council's consultant solicitors following the review of input from Citizen Advice Bureau and council staff. The draft deed is being checked by Legal Services and will be sent to Citizen Advice Bureau for execution. This is anticipated to be finalised in quarter four.</td>
<td>This item will be included into a future work programme once the head lease review is completed and the deed executed. This renewal is dependent on execution of the head lease which is with Legal Services for review. Progressing the renewal will be deferred until the review is completed and the head lease deed is executed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1298</td>
<td>Memorial Square, 3 Memorial Drive, New Lynn. Lease to Auckland Citizens Advice Bureau Incorporated (New Lynn)</td>
<td>Renew building lease for three years from 1 July 2018 to existing group</td>
<td>CF: Community Leases</td>
<td>1/07/2016</td>
<td>2 x 3 years</td>
<td>$1,000</td>
<td>Deferred</td>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>The draft lease has been returned from council's consultant solicitors following the review of input from Citizen Advice Bureau and council staff. The draft deed is being checked by Legal Services, and will be sent to Citizen Advice Bureau for execution. This is anticipated to be finalised in quarter four.</td>
<td>This item will be included into a future work programme once the head lease review is completed and the deed executed. This renewal is dependent on execution of the head lease which is with Legal Services for review. Progressing the renewal will be deferred until the review is completed and the head lease deed is executed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1299</td>
<td>Olympic Park, 36 Portage Road, New Lynn. Lease to Western Indoor Bowling Association Incorporated</td>
<td>Renew ground lease for five years from 1 May 2019 to existing group.</td>
<td>CF: Community Leases</td>
<td>1/05/2009</td>
<td>1 x 5 years</td>
<td>$633.00</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>A site visit has been undertaken and a workshop held with the Whau Local Board. A formal report recommending a renewal of community lease will be presented to the local board in quarter four. Formal advice from Auckland Council's legal team regarding the hearing of submissions and on progressing the lease is expected in the early part of quarter four.</td>
<td>At its business meeting of 24 April 2019 the Whau Local Board approved a renewal of community lease for a term of two years commencing 1 May 2019. Pending Auckland Council's legal advice regarding the hearing of submissions on the land classification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1300</td>
<td>Saunders Reserve, 20 Saunders Place, Avondale. Lease to West End Bowling Club Incorporated</td>
<td>Renew ground lease to existing group</td>
<td>CF: Community Leases</td>
<td>19/08/2003</td>
<td>nil</td>
<td>$1,000</td>
<td>Deferred</td>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>The scale of the refurbishment works on the New Lynn Community Centre and its impact on the area leased by Plunket is not yet known. This lease project is proposed to commence in quarter four.</td>
<td>This lease project is deferred to the 2019/20 work programme as advice from Auckland Council's legal team regarding the hearing of submissions on the land classification has not been received. The item cannot be processed until refurbishment works of the New Lynn Community Centre have been completed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2690</td>
<td>45-47 Tebana Avenue, New Lynn. Lease to Royal New Zealand Plunket Trust</td>
<td>New building lease to existing group. Deferred from the 2017/2018 work programme due to refurbishment works to be undertaken.</td>
<td>CF: Community Leases</td>
<td>1/07/2001</td>
<td>1 x 5 years</td>
<td>$1,000</td>
<td>Deferred</td>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>Two applications expressing an interest in leasing the facility were received from community groups. Due to the small number of applicants staff are engaging with council's legal team regarding the options for going out for a second round of public notification of calling for expressions of interest in leasing the facility.</td>
<td>This item is pending a formal report to be prepared on the outcome of the public notification and will be presented to the board in September 2016. Public notification of councils intentions to grant a new community lease for this facility is underway. A formal report to the board on the outcome of the public notification will be presented in September 2019. This lease project is deferred to the 2019/20 work programme.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2691</td>
<td>Eastdale Reserve, 33-37 Eastdale Road, Avondale. Vacancy of storage shed</td>
<td>New lease vacancy</td>
<td>CF: Community Leases</td>
<td>0/0/0/1900</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$8,000</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>Three applications expressing an interest in leasing the facility were received from community groups. The Whau Local Board has expressed that they wish to meet with each of the applicants prior to a report being presented at a business meeting recommending a lease to one of the groups. The meeting with the applicants will take place in quarter four.</td>
<td>Public notification of councils intentions to grant a new community lease for this facility has been completed. A formal report to the board on the outcome of the public notification will be presented in July 2019. This lease project is deferred to the 2019/20 work programme.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ATEED six-monthly report to the Whau Local Board

File No.: CP2019/14735

Te take mō te pūrongo
Purpose of the report
1. This report provides the Whau Local Board with highlights of ATEED’s activities in the Whau Local Board area as well as ATEED’s regional activities for the six months 1 January to 30 June 2019.

2. This report should be read in conjunction with ATEED’s Quarter 3 report to Auckland Council (available at www.aucklandnz.com) and the forthcoming Quarter 4 report to the Auckland Council CCO Finance and Performance Committee (available 17 September). Although these reports focus primarily on the breadth of ATEED’s work at a regional level, much of the work highlighted has significant local impact.

Whakarāpopototanga matua
Executive summary
3. This report provides the Whau Local Board with relevant information on the following ATEED activities:
   - Locally driven initiatives: Whau Pop-up Business School and the Young Enterprise Scheme
   - Supporting local business growth
   - Filming activity
   - Youth employment pathways
   - Youth connections
   - Offshore talent attraction
   - Local and regional destination management and marketing
   - Delivered, funded and facilitated events

4. Further detail on these activities is listed under Analysis and advice.

Ngā tūtohunga
Recommendation
That the Whau Local Board:
   a) receive ATEED’s update to the Whau Local Board – August 2019.

Horopaki
Context
5. ATEED has two areas of focus:

   Economic Development – including business support, business attraction and investment, local economic development, trade and industry development, skills employment and talent and innovation and entrepreneurship.

   Destination - supporting sustainable growth of the visitor economy with a focus on destination marketing and management, major events, business events (meetings and conventions) and international student attraction and retention.
6. These two portfolios also share a common platform relating to the promotion of the city globally to ensure that Auckland competes effectively with other mid-tier high quality of life cities.

7. ATEED works with local boards, Council and CCOs to support decision-making on local economic growth and facilitates or co-ordinates the delivery of local economic development activity. ATEED ensures that the regional activities that ATEED leads or delivers are fully leveraged to support local economic growth and employment.

8. In addition, ATEED’s dedicated Local Economic Development (LED) team works with local boards who allocate locally driven initiatives (LDI) budget to economic development activities. The LED team delivers a range of services such as the development of proposals, including feasibility studies that enable local boards to directly fund or otherwise advocate for the implementation of local initiatives.

9. ATEED delivers its services at the local level through business hubs based in the north, west and south of the region, as well as its central office at 167B Victoria Street West.

10. Additional information about ATEED’s role and activities can be found at www.aucklandnz.com/ateed

Tātaritanga me ngā tohutohu
Analysis and advice

11. As at 30 June, 3303 businesses had been through an ATEED intervention or programme. Of these, 75 businesses were in the Whau Local Board area – 22 businesses went through Destination-related programmes and 53 businesses went through Economic Development-related programmes.

Economic Development

Locally Driven Initiatives:

12. Whau Pop-up Business School: The PopUp Business School was contracted during Q3, and ran in New Lynn from 29 April to 10 May 2019, in partnership with the Henderson-Massey and Puketāpapa Local Boards and the Ministry of Social Development. A full report of the event is still to be received and will be made available to the Local Board when available.

13. Young Enterprise Scheme: The Auckland Chamber of Commerce has delivered the Lion Foundation Young Enterprise Scheme (YES) since January 2018. ATEED maintains a strategic role. The Chamber invoiced for funds during Q3 and payment was subsequently made. During the period, there were 58 schools participating in the Auckland YES programme, representing 1376 students completing the programme. Avondale College and Kelston Girls’ College are the two schools from the Whau Local Board area participating in the YES programme.

Supporting Local Business Growth

15. This area is serviced by the Business and Enterprise team in the West hub, based in the Henderson Service Centre. The team comprises of two Business and Innovation Advisors and administration support. The role of this team is to support the growth of Auckland’s key internationally competitive sectors and to support to provide quality jobs.

16. A key programme in achieving this is central government’s Regional Business Partnership Network (RBPN). This is delivered by ATEED’s nine Business and Innovation Advisors (BIA), whose role is to connect local businesses to resources, experts and services in innovation, R&D, business growth and management.

17. ATEED’s BIAs engage 1:1 with businesses through a discovery meeting to understand their challenges, gather key data, and provide connections / recommendations via an action plan.

---

1 This activity is subject to local boards prioritising local economic development, and subsequently allocating funding to local economic development through their local board agreements.

2 FY 2018/19 result for ATEED’s SOI KPI2
18. Where businesses qualify (meet the programme criteria and/or align to ATEED’s purpose as defined in the SOI) the advisors facilitate government support to qualifying businesses, in the form of:

- Callaghan Innovation R&D grants (including Getting Started, project and student grants (https://www.callaghaninnovation.govt.nz/grants)
- Callaghan Innovation subsidised innovation programmes (https://www.callaghaninnovation.govt.nz/innovation-skills)
- RBPN business capability vouchers (NZTE), where the business owner may be issued co-funding up to $5,000 per annum for business training via registered service providers. Voucher co-funding is prioritised to businesses accessing this service for the first time, in order to encourage more businesses to engage with experts to assist their management and growth.
- NZTE services such as Export Essentials (https://workshop.exportessentials.nz/register/)
- Referrals to NZ Business Mentors via The Chamber of Commerce.

19. During the reporting period, ATEED Business and Innovation Advisors met with 17 businesses in the Whau Local Board area, two for innovation advice and services and 15 for business growth and capability advice and services (two were returning clients). From these engagements:

- Twelve RBPN vouchers were issued to assist with business capability training
- One connection was made to Callaghan Innovation services and programmes
- Six referrals were made to Business Mentors New Zealand
- Four connections were made to ATEED staff and programmes
- More than 80 connections were made to other businesses or programmes.

Other support for new businesses

20. During the period, ATEED also ran workshops and events aimed at establishing or growing a new business and building capability. Six people from the Whau Local Board area attended an event below:

- Starting off Right workshop - 2

Filming activity within the Whau Local Board area

21. ATEED’s Screen Auckland team provides film facilitation services as part of ATEED’s support for the screen and digital sector of Auckland’s economy. Screen Auckland facilitates, processes and issues film permits for filming activity in public open space. This activity supports local businesses and employment, as well as providing a revenue stream to local boards for the use of local parks.

22. Between 1 January and 30 June 2019, 305 film permits were issued in the Auckland region across 379 locations and 404 days of filming. Of these, nine permits were issued in the Whau Local Board area. The Whau Local Board area’s share of film permit revenue was $1,339.13 for the period (total for all boards combined was $51,191.30).

23. On average, 37 crew work on each shoot day. This does not reflect filming that also takes place in studios, private property or low impact activity that wouldn’t have required a permit. During the period, 81 permits were issued for TV commercials (TVC), making up 27 per cent of permits issued. A quarter of the TVC permits were destined for an international market.

24. Some of the key film productions that were issued permits to film in the Whau Local Board area were:

- Baby, Done (feature film)
- Power Rangers

25. Auckland is becoming a popular destination for international television networks to pilot an episode of a new TV series to allow them to gauge if a series will be successful. Permits were issued for locations across the Auckland region earlier this year for two new US pilots.
Youth employment pathways

26. The *Go with Tourism* campaign was successfully launched on 5 April, attracting 170 employers and more than 700 youth by year-end. The campaign is designed to shift perceptions many young people have about careers in tourism and address the skills gap in the industry.

27. ATEED delivered the Future Ready Summit on 26 June at the Vodafone Events Centre in Manukau. Approximately 250 employers, 40 young people and 20 speakers (eight under the age of 24). The Youth Employer Pledge partners were the primary audience. The *Future Ready Auckland: Driving economic development through technology and transformation* insights paper was also released, attracting strong media attention - including a lead story on Radio NZ *Nine to Noon*. The research insights aims to better understand Auckland’s future skill needs, including future growth sectors. ATEED is currently working with pledge partners to harness the network, with a focus on south and west Auckland now that Youth Connections has transferred to The Southern Initiative.

Local Jobs and Skills Hubs

28. ATEED is the regional partner for the network of Auckland Jobs and Skills Hubs. These multi-agency hubs support employers at developments where there is a high and sustained demand for local labour and skills development. The Auckland network includes Ara (Auckland Airport development), City Centre and Tāmaki hubs. As at 30 June, 377 people had been placed into employment via the ATEED-facilitated CBD hub, 1,914 training outcomes were delivered, and 11 apprenticeships were facilitated. About 36 per cent of those employed are Māori, against a target of 40 per cent. ATEED has developed a school engagement pilot programme with interested employers and schools aimed at engaging students with career opportunities in the construction and infrastructure sector. ATEED also provided funding to a Progressive Employment Programme for at-risk youth, supporting cadet training and developing youth-ready capability within businesses working on the City Rail Link. The City Centre hub is a training partner for this programme.

Offshore talent attraction

29. The *Auckland. We’re Hiring* campaign ran from January to March 2019. The campaign is designed to attract high-skilled offshore construction and technology talent to Auckland. The campaign resulted in 2295 job applications.

Destination

Regional destination management and marketing activity

30. The *Elemental AKL* winter festival website went live on 29 April. The festival ran from 1-31 July and is developed to promote sustainable tourism growth by encouraging visitation more evenly throughout the year, and dispersing visitors across the region. The programme included more than 60 free and ticketed events across the themes of light, food, entertainment, and culture. *Elemental Feast* went live on 4 June, with 120 restaurants participating in plating up unique festival dishes using ingredients sourced from the Auckland region and inspired by the elements. Farm to Table Gourmet Weekend, Winter Lights at Paradice Ice Skating, the Matariki Glow Show, sounds at the Grounds and Fire in the Western Sky were events held in the western part of the city.

31. The *Short Break* campaign, aimed at leisure travellers on Australia’s eastern seaboard, ran during Q3 and Q4. There were three bursts of the campaign, focused on themes of nature, food and wine, and ultimate things to do in Auckland - featuring west coast beaches, Waiheke Island, central Auckland and other parts of the region. As part of the campaign, ATEED hosted news.com.au and lifestyle.com.au in Auckland, showcasing the city’s unique offering that is promoted in the campaign. News.com.au has a reach of six million and will produce a dedicated feature on Auckland as well as share one article on Facebook with their
1.1m followers. Lifestyle.com.au has a reach of 1.2m unique viewers and will produce two dedicated online features.

**Delivered, funded and facilitated events**

32. During the period, ATEED delivered the 2019 Auckland Lantern Festival at the Auckland Domain. Customer satisfaction was 89 per cent, an increase of nine per cent compared to the previous year. Some key findings from the customer survey found that respondents were very positive about what the event meant for the city, with 96 per cent of respondents agreeing that Auckland Council should continue to support events like the Lantern Festival and 94 per cent saying that the event brought people from different ethnic and cultural groups together (compared to 95 per cent and 91 per cent respectively in the previous year). The Auckland Lantern Festival’s sustainability objectives through the Cultural Festivals Strategy resulted in 62 per cent of waste being diverted from landfill. This has nearly doubled in two years, with the diversion being 34 per cent in 2017.

33. Given the need to prioritise police resourcing following the events in Christchurch on 15 March, the 2019 Pasifika festival, which was due to run on 23 and 24 March, was cancelled. Although the festival would have been an opportunity to bring Auckland’s communities together at a time of national mourning, given the unprecedented nature of what happened and after discussions with the New Zealand Police, it was agreed that Police must prioritise resourcing to ensure the safety of communities across the city.

34. During the period, residents of the Whau Local Board area were also able to enjoy events funded or facilitated by ATEED across the Auckland region, including the ASB Classic, Splore Music and Arts Festival, Sculpture on the Gulf, the New Zealand Comedy Festival, the Auckland Writers Festival, the Auckland Art Fair, Warhorse, and Auckland Wine Week.

35. A full schedule of major events is available on ATEED’s website, aucklandnz.com

Ngā whakaaweawe me ngā tirohanga a te rōpū Kaunihera
**Council group impacts and views**

14. ATEED assesses and manages our initiatives on a case-by-case basis and engages with the Council group where required.

Ngā whakaaweawe ā-rohe me ngā tirohanga a te poari ā-rohe
**Local impacts and local board views**

15. Local Board views are not sought for the purposes of this report. Local Board views were sought for some of the initiatives described in this report.

Tauākī whakaaweawe Māori
**Māori impact statement**

16. The proposed decision to receive the six-monthly report has no impact on Māori. ATEED assesses and responds to any impact that our initiatives may have on Māori on a case-by-case basis.

Ngā ritenga ā-pūtea
**Financial implications**

17. The proposed decision of receiving the report has no financial implications.

Ngā raru tūpono me ngā whakamaurutanga
**Risks and mitigations**

18. The proposed decision to receive the six-monthly report has no risk. ATEED assesses and manages any risk associated with our initiatives on a case-by-case basis.
Ngā koringa ā-muri

Next steps

19. ATEED will provide the next six-monthly report to the Local Board in February 2020 and will cover the period 1 July to 31 December 2019.

Ngā tāpirihanga

Attachments

There are no attachments for this report.

Ngā kaihaina

Signatories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Samantha-Jane Miranda, Operational Strategy Advisor (ATEED)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authorisers</td>
<td>Quanita Khan, Manager Operational Strategy and Planning (ATEED)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Glenn Boyd - Relationship Manager Henderson-Massey, Waitakere Ranges, Whau</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Te take mō te pūrongo

Purpose of the report
1. To present the updated governance forward work calendar.

Whakarāpopototanga matua

Executive summary
2. The governance forward work calendar for the Whau Local Board is in Attachment A. The calendar is updated monthly, reported to business meetings and distributed to council staff.

3. The governance forward work calendars are part of Auckland Council’s quality advice programme and aim to support local boards’ governance role by:
   - ensuring advice on meeting agendas is driven by local board priorities
   - clarifying what advice is expected and when
   - clarifying the rationale for reports.

4. The calendar also aims to provide guidance for staff supporting local boards and greater transparency for the public.

Ngā tūtohunga

Recommendation
That the Whau Local Board:

a) receive the governance forward work calendar for August 2019.

Ngā tāpirihanga / Attachments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Governance Forward Work Calendar - Aug 2019</td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ngā kaihaina / Signatories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Riya Seth - Democracy Advisor - Whau</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authoriser</td>
<td>Glenn Boyd - Relationship Manager Henderson-Massey, Waitakere Ranges, Whau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Meeting</td>
<td>Month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Meeting</td>
<td>September</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Meeting</td>
<td>September</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Meeting</td>
<td>Oct/Nov</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Meeting</td>
<td>Nov/Dec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Meeting</td>
<td>TBC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Meeting</td>
<td>TBC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Te take mō te pūrongo
Purpose of the report
1. To present the record of the workshop held in July 2019 by the Whau Local Board.

Whakarāpopototanga matua
Executive summary
2. Briefings provided at the workshop held are as follows:
   a) 3 July 2019
      i) Proposed placemaking activation of OAG's Building
   b) 31 July 2019
      i) Avondale Community Centre Design Brief
      ii) New Windsor Parks and Open Spaces projects
      iii) Whau Parks LDI improvements
      iv) Introduction of new Community Empowerment Staff
      v) Community Places Direct Delivery Highlights
      vi) New Lynn to Avondale shared path

Ngā tūtohunga
Recommendation
That the Whau Local Board:
   a) confirm the record of the workshops held on 3 July and 31 July 2019.

Ngā tāpirihanga
Attachments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Workshop record - 3 July 2019</td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Workshop record - 31 July 2019</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ngā kaihaina
Signatories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Riya Seth - Democracy Advisor - Whau</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authoriser</td>
<td>Glenn Boyd - Relationship Manager Henderson-Massey, Waitakere Ranges, Whau</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Whau Local Board Workshop Record

Workshop record of the Whau Local Board held at the Whau Local Board boardroom, 31 Totara Avenue, New Lynn, Auckland on Wednesday 03 July 2019, commencing at 9:17 am.

PRESENT
Chairperson: Tracy Mulholland
Members: Catherine Farmer; David Whitley; Derek Battersby, QSM, JP; Susan Zhu; Te'eva Matafai
Apologies: Duncan Macdonald
Also present: Glenn Boyd, Antonina Georgetti, Pepe Sapolu Riweti

Notes: Meeting opened by Chair at 9:17 am.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Workshop Item</th>
<th>Summary of discussions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Item 1: Administration/Operations</td>
<td>Chair noted: Three upcoming board meetings July, August and September will not have a pre-meeting. No objections were made. RM will guide board on suitable farewell for retiring Member(s). Acknowledged the success of the ethnic peoples’ plan. RM noted 17 July workshop and 24 July business meeting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time: 9:17am – 9.35am</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item 2: Proposed placemaking activation of OAG’s Building</td>
<td>Presenters: Lisa Gooding, Adam Sadgrove, Carmen Szeto Staff discussed the possible activation of ‘Site C’ until development can commence. Members noted their disappointment in the delays in progressing the development of the site. Given that current situation around lower levels of foot traffic and cost for limited return the majority of members expressed support for the site continuing being used as car parking until development is possible. Members suggested instead of the proposed activation next to OAGs building to instead give support to increased activation of Memorial square by the library. A request was made to ensure weeds were better managed across area and around OAGs building and that site is kept safe. Staff confirmed to plan for the OAG site to be cleaned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time: 9:35am – 9.55am</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Whau Local Board Workshop Record

Workshop record of the Whau Local Board held at the Whau Local Board boardroom, 31 Totara Avenue, New Lynn, Auckland on Wednesday 31 July 2019, commencing at 9:15am.

PRESENT
Chairperson: Tracy Mulholland
Members: Catherine Farmer; David Whitley (until 12.20pm, item 5); Derek Battersby, QSM, JP (Until 11.30am, item 7); Susan Zhu; Te‘eva Matafai
Also present: Glenn Boyd, Mary Binney, Antonina Georgetti, Pepe Sapolu Reweti, Rosetta Fuimaono Lisa Diggins, Mel Lelo, Riya Seth

Notes: Meeting opened by Chair at 9:15am

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Workshop Item</th>
<th>Summary of discussions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Item 1: Administration/Operations Time: 9.15am – 9.35am</td>
<td>RM noted that local board PA liaison has submitted medical resignation and current staff will be in place until October 2019. Also noted was upcoming MHF Symposium on 3 August at MIT Manukau Campus. Chair reminded members of deadline to update gifts register and declare interests online. Chair also noted board’s disappointment at cutting/pruning of heritage trees on private property at the corner of Margan and Rankin Ave. Staff noted that the situation is known to council and regulatory department has been managing the issue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item 2: Avondale Community Centre Design Brief – CONFIDENTIAL Time: 9.35am – 10.30am</td>
<td>Presenter: Nicola Terry In attendance: Justine Haves, Michael O’Shea, Kaylah Burke, Darryl Soljan, Helen Biffin Members received Avondale Community Centre design brief. It was noted that this item will be coming to August board meeting when it becomes a public item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item 4: New Windsor Parks and Open Spaces projects to use rationalisation budget Time: 10.40am – 11.00am</td>
<td>Presenter: Helen Biffin Members discussed park development project opportunities in the New Windsor and neighbouring suburbs, for utilising rationalisation budget received from the sale of the property at 37 New Windsor Road. It was noted that staff will prepare a report for August / September local board meeting focusing on upgrade in Arthur Curry and Chalmers Reserve with any balance to Whitney Reserve.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Item 3: Whau Parks LDI improvements Time: 11.00am – 11.05am | Presenter: Helen Biffin The following points were noted:
  - The Green Bay Community Corner improvements project & Barron Green Domain upgrades – the chair acknowledged on behalf of the board the activity in the area and has had positive comments from locals who are pleased that local parks and spaces are getting refreshed.
  - Brain Park Basketball Hoop Project – Board is mindful that the population is growing in Kelston and there is a high youth population. The board asked that staff go out and consult with
Item 7:
**Introduction of new Community Empowerment Staff**
Presenter: Pepe Sapolu Reweti
New staff introduced from Community Empowerment Unit:
- Rosetta Fuimaono - Specialist advisor
- Lisa Diggins - Advisor
- Mel Lelo - Youth empowerment specialist advisor
- Michael Alofa - Specialist advisor

**Item 5:**
**Community Places Direct Delivery Highlights**
Presenter: Jess Kelly, Miriam Muiava, Sara Watson, Moana Cook, Maree Edwards, Letitia Maine
Local board received highlights for 2019 from the community-led centres.
- Green Bay Community House
- Kelston Community Hub
- Blockhouse Bay Community Centre
- New Lynn and Avondale Community Centres
Chair acknowledged the good work all community centres are doing and achieving great results for community.

Item 6:
**New Lynn to Avondale shared path**
Presenter: Kane Hopkins, Jason Budd, Ken Lee-Jones, Owena Schuster
The board received update on the New Lynn to Avondale shared path project. The following points were noted:
- There has been slight change to initial plan due to the path being in Kiwi Rail corridor. AT is still waiting for final approvals from Kiwi Rail. There will be loss of parking on St George St due to updated design.
- Karakia ceremony will be planned and a separate sod turning event will also be held.
- Chair reminded AT staff to keep traffic management in mind due to concurrent Wolverton Culvert project work.
- AT Communications on project will be shared with local board members and local community.
Exclusion of the Public: Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987

That the Whau Local Board

a) exclude the public from the following part(s) of the proceedings of this meeting.

The general subject of each matter to be considered while the public is excluded, the reason for passing this resolution in relation to each matter, and the specific grounds under section 48(1) of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 for the passing of this resolution follows.


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reason for passing this resolution in relation to each matter</th>
<th>Particular interest(s) protected (where applicable)</th>
<th>Ground(s) under section 48(1) for the passing of this resolution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The public conduct of the part of the meeting would be likely to result in the disclosure of information for which good reason for withholding exists under section 7.</td>
<td>s7(2)(j) - The withholding of the information is necessary to prevent the disclosure or use of official information for improper gain or improper advantage. In particular, the report contains detailed financial adjustments, assumptions and judgements that have impact on the financial results of the Auckland Council group as at 30 June 2019 that require final Audit New Zealand sign-off and release to the New Zealand Stock Exchange.</td>
<td>s48(1)(a) The public conduct of the part of the meeting would be likely to result in the disclosure of information for which good reason for withholding exists under section 7.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reason for passing this resolution in relation to each matter</th>
<th>Particular interest(s) protected (where applicable)</th>
<th>Ground(s) under section 48(1) for the passing of this resolution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The public conduct of the part of the meeting would be likely to result in the disclosure of information for which good reason for withholding exists under section 7.</td>
<td>s7(2)(j) - The withholding of the information is necessary to prevent the disclosure or use of official information for improper gain or improper advantage. In particular, the report contains detailed financial adjustments, assumptions and judgements that have impact on the financial results of the Auckland Council group as at 30 June 2019 that require final Audit New Zealand sign-off and release to the New Zealand Stock Exchange.</td>
<td>s48(1)(a) The public conduct of the part of the meeting would be likely to result in the disclosure of information for which good reason for withholding exists under section 7.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>